



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



600021084L





ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY.



ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY,

BASED ON

GREEN'S SHORT HISTORY

OF THE

ENGLISH PEOPLE.

BY

C. W. A. TAIT, M.A.,

ASSISTANT MASTER IN CLIFTON COLLEGE.



LONDON :

MACMILLAN AND CO.

1878.

[The Right of Translation and Reproduction is Reserved.]

LONDON :

R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS,
BREAD STREET HILL,

PREFACE.

THIS little work was begun in the form of fly-leaves for the use of boys on the Modern side at Clifton, who were reading Mr. Green's Short History in school.

As it has now been tried for two years as an aid to teaching, I venture to publish it in the hope that it may assist other students.

Mr. Green is no way responsible, either as regards its plan or its contents, but I am glad to take this opportunity of thanking him for his kindness in allowing it to appear before the public.

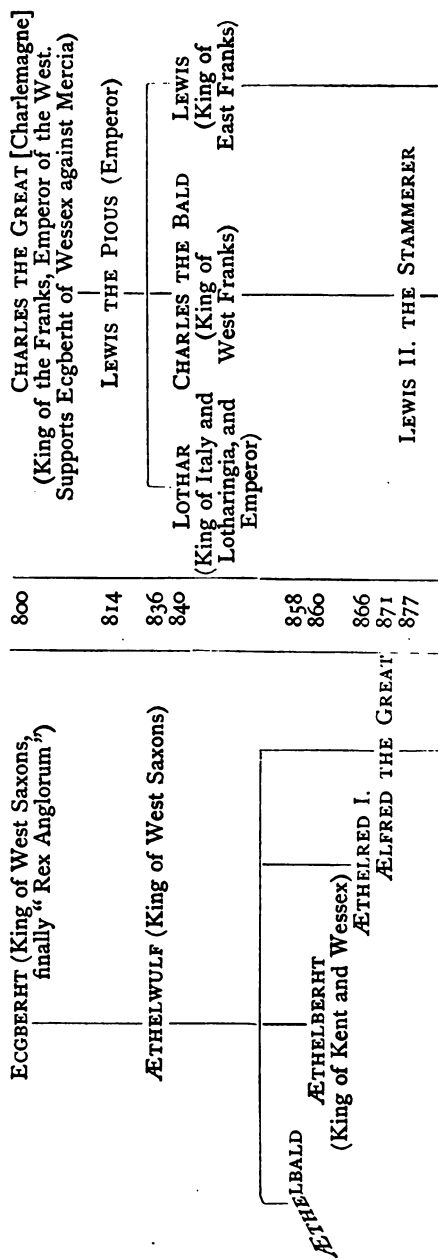
My best thanks are also due to my friend and colleague, Mr. J. G. Grenfell, and to the Rev. S. B. Philpotts, Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

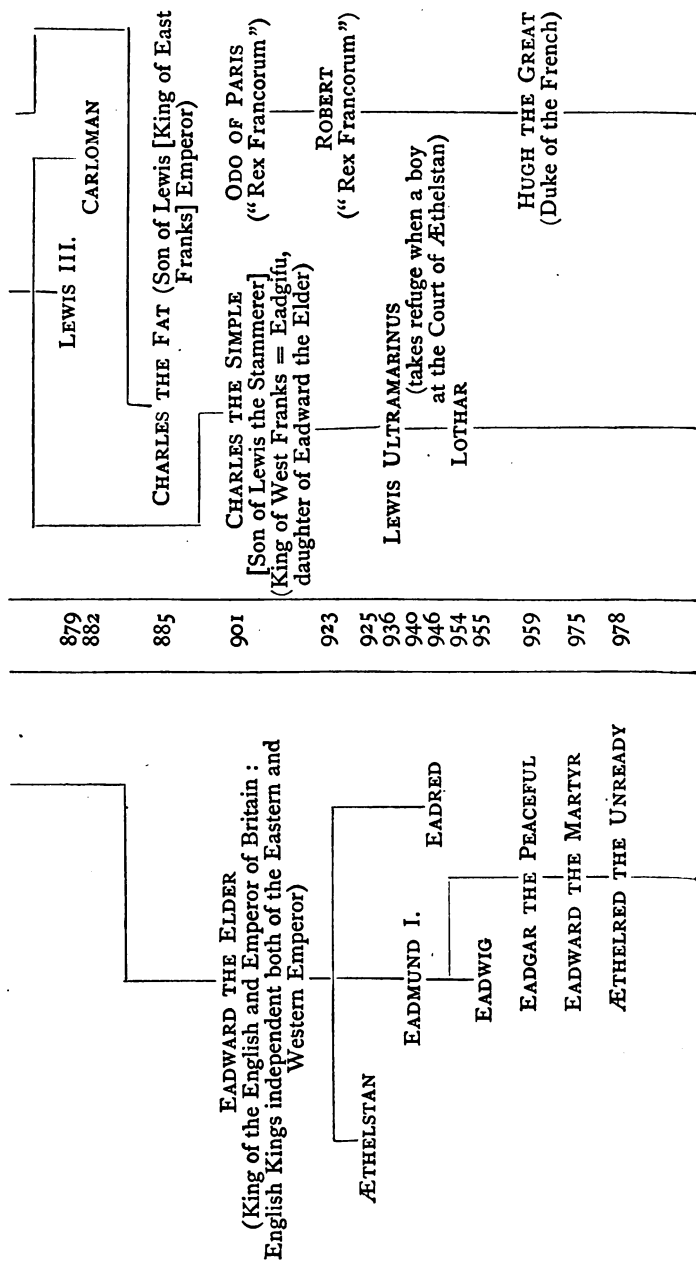
CLIFTON, *April*, 1878.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.

TABLE OF ENGLISH, WEST-FRANKISH, AND FRENCH KINGS,

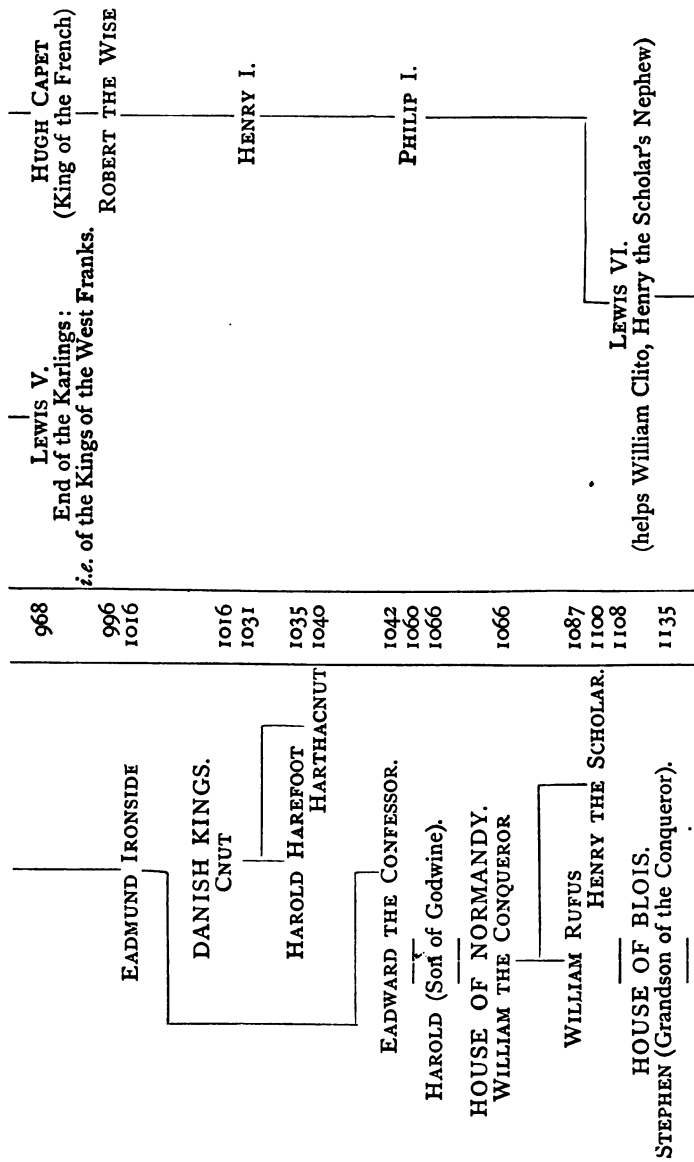
Showing the principal points of contact between English and French History.





ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.

9



THE HOUSE OF PLANTAGENET.
HENRY II. = Eleanor of Aquitaine
(Grandson of Henry the
Scholar)

RICHARD LION HEART

JOHN

HENRY III.

EDWARD I. = Margaret, daughter of
Philip III.

EDWARD II. = Isabella, daughter of
Philip IV.

1137

1154

1180

1189

1199

1215

1223

1226

1270

1272

1286

1307

1314

1316

1316

1322

LEWIS VII. = Eleanor of Aquitaine
Patron of Becket

PHILIP AUGUSTUS

(intrigues successively against Henry II., Richard, John)

LEWIS VIII.

(while Dauphin, is offered the throne of England)

LEWIS IX. — Saint Lewis
(mediates between the King and the Barons)

PHILIP III.

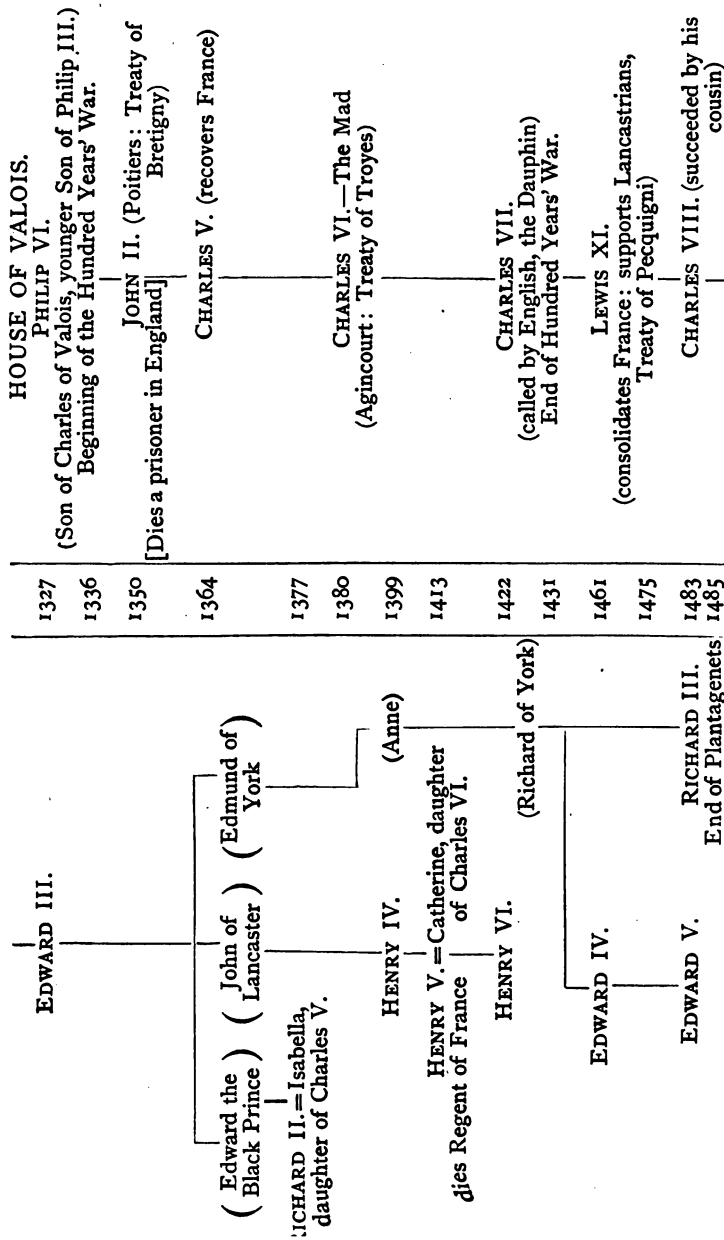
PHILIP IV. (procures the election
of the French Pope
Clement V.)

LEWIS X.

(succeeded [after John I., an infant] by his brother)

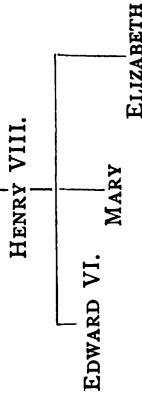
PHILIP V. (succeeded by his brother)

CHARLES IV.



HOUSE OF TUDOR.

HENRY VII.
(lineally descended from John of Lancaster and Catherine Swynford). See Tables (Henry VI. E.)



1485

LEWIS XII. = Mary, daughter of Henry VII.
(succeeded by his cousin)

1498

FRANCIS I. (Field of the Cloth of Gold)

1509

1515

HENRY II. = Catherine de Medici (obtains Mary Stuart
in marriage for his son)

1547

1553

1558

1559

FRANCIS II. (claims English crown; succeeded by
his brother)

CHARLES IX.

(massacre of S. Bartholomew)

1560

1572

HENRY III. (by his assassination the line of Valois
becomes extinct)
[succeeded by his cousin]

1574

HOUSE OF BOURBON.
HENRY IV. (Edict of Nantes, 1598.)

1589

End of House of Tudor.

THE STUARTS.

JAMES I.
(Great Grandson of Margaret, daughter of Henry VII.)

1603

1610

CHARLES I. = Henrietta Maria, daughter
of Henry IV.

1625

1643

LEWIS XIII. — Richelieu.

LEWIS XIV. — Mazarin.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.

<div>COMMONWEALTH.</div> <div>OLIVER CROMWELL, Protector.</div>	1649	
	1653	
<div>CHARLES II.</div> <div>JAMES II.</div>	1660	
	1685	
<div>(James, MARY II. = WILLIAM III. the Old Pretender)—1715</div> <div>(Charles Edward the Young Pretender)—1745</div> <div>End of the Stuarts.</div>	1688	(Triple alliance against France, 1668. Lewis pensions Charles: Treaty of Dover, 1670. Revocation of Edict of Nantes, 1685.) (Lewis supports James. War with William. Treaty of Ryswick. 1697.)
	1702	(War of the Spanish Succession, 1701. Blenheim, 1704. Treaty of Utrecht, 1713.)
<div>HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK.</div> <div>GEORGE I. (Great Grandson of James I.)</div>	1713	
(Rising for the Old Pretender.)	1715	LEWIS XV. (Great Grandson of Lewis XIV., Duke of Orleans, Regent.)
GEORGE II.	1717	
(Rising under the Young Pretender.)	1741	(War of the Austrian Succession: Dettingen, 1743. Fontenoy, 1744.)
	1745	

GEORGE III.	1760	LEWIS XVI. (Grandson of Lewis XV. Helps the United States in the War of Independence)
	1774	
GEORGE IV. (Edward Duke of Kent)	1793	LEWIS XVII. ("The little captive King") REPUBLIC. (War with the allies, including England.)
	1799	NAPOLEON BUONAPARTE—First Consul. (Peace of Amiens.)
WILLIAM IV. VICTORIA.	1804	NAPOLEON BUONAPARTE—Emperor. (Peninsular War.)
	1814	LEWIS XVIII. [brother of Lewis XVI.] (The Hundred Days. Waterloo, 1815.)
HOUSE OF ORLEANS. LOUIS PHILIPPE (cousin to Charles X.)—King of the French.	1820	CHARLES X. (brother of Lewis XVIII.)
	1824	
REPUBLIC. Coup d'État. LOUIS NAPOLEON.—Consul.	1830	LOUIS NAPOLEON.—Emperor.
	1837	
REPUBLIC. LOUIS NAPOLEON.—Emperor.	1848	REPUBLIC.
	1852	
REPUBLIC.	1853	REPUBLIC.
	1870	

ANALYSIS

OF THE

HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.

A Britain and the English. Pp. 1—7.

1. *Sleswick and lower Hanover, the fatherland of the English.*
To the N. of the English the Jutes in Jutland, to the E. and W. the Saxons in Holstein from the Weser to the Rhine.

2. English social and political life. Pp. 2—4.

a A nation of farmers living in villages, *i.e.*, in clusters of homesteads.

b Each village composed of families, not of individuals; thus,

- 1 The "blood-wite" (compensation for wrong) paid not by man to man, but by family to family.

- 2 Each man accused of wrong condemned or acquitted by the oath of his family.

c Each village consists of *freemen*, "ceorls," and *men of noble blood*, "eorls," from whom the freemen chose leaders, called Heretogan in war, and Ealdormen in peace.

d The sovereign power lies with the body of ceorls; judgments given, and peace and war settled, by the village Witan, *i.e.*, the wise men of the village, round whom all ceorls gather and have their voice; "Si displicuit sententia, fremitu adspernantur: sin placuit, frameas concutiunt."

3. English religion. P. 4.

Each ceorl his own priest, sacrificing to the god of his hearth.

Woden, the war-god, the father of the race, who taught his children letters, and gave them ways and boundaries.

Thor, the god of air and storm and rain.

Frea, the goddess of peace and joy and fruitfulness.

Tiw, to meet whom is death.

Eostre, the god of the dawn and of spring.

Behind these the remnants of an older mythology, and the deities of popular fancy.

4. The British. Pp. 5—7.

a The Roman conquest.

Britain discovered by Julius Cæsar, B.C. 55. Caradoc, who ruled by the Severn, conquered by Claudius, A.D. 50. Mona (Anglesey) the sacred isle, and Buddug (Boadicea) queen of the Icenians (Norfolk and Suffolk), conquered by Suetonius Paulinus, 61. Britain finally subdued by Julius Agricola, who sails round the island, discovers the Orkneys, builds a line of forts from the Forth to the Clyde to keep out the barbarians of Caledonia. 78—84.

b The Roman civilization.

The whole city population becomes Roman. Walled towns (*Castra Chesters*) connected by roads,

Walling Street, from the S.E. coast through London to Chester;

Ikenild Street, semicircularly through Forest of Arden, Cirencester, Goring, Cambridge, Caistor;

Irmin Street, from S. David's to Southampton.

The Foss, between Cornwall and Lincoln.

Tin mines worked in Cornwall, lead mines in Somerset and Northumberland, and iron mines in the Forest of Dean. London a centre for export of corn; Christianity introduced through Mediterranean commerce; but no freedom, no self-government; *men forgot how to fight for a country which they had forgot how to govern.*

c The British and the Picts.

The country population remain unromanized and form alliances with the Picts; Hadrian's dyke from the Tyne to the Solway Frith to keep out the Picts, 120, afterwards strengthened by a chain of stone forts under Severus, 207—210.

d The departure of the Romans.

The Invasion of the Western Empire by the Franks in Gaul, the West-Goths in Spain, the Burgundians between the Rhone and Italy, the East Goths in Italy. Roman troops recalled from Britain, 410. Britain exposed to internal strife between Town and Country, and foreign pillage from Picts, Scots (from Ireland), and English pirates, "sea-wolves that live on the pillage of the world." The aid of the English pirates called in against the Picts and Scots. 449.

B The English Conquest. Pp. 7—17. 449—597.

1. Landing of the Jutes, Hengist and Horsa at Ebbsfleet in the isle of Thanet. Thanet chosen for purposes of defence. 449. Quarrels between the English and the natives. Battle of *Aylesford*, on the Medway. Foundation of Jutish king-

doms of East and West Kent. Principal town, *Cant-wara-byrig*, Kentmensborough, *Canterbury*. Extermination of the natives. Pp. 7—10.

2. Landing of the Saxons under Ælle and Cissa. 477. "They beset Anderida (near Pevensey), and slew all that were therein." 491. Foundation of Sussex (Kingdom of the South-Saxons. Principal town, *Cissanceaster*, the camp of Cissa, *Chichester*). Saxon advance inland checked by the Andredsweald.
3. Landing of the Ealdormen Cerdic and Cymric in Southampton water. 495. Victory at Charford (Cerdic's-ford) and foundation of the kingdom of Wessex. 519. (Principal town Wint-ceaster, Winchester.) Resistance of the native prince Arthur: the English defeated by him at Badbury in Dorsetshire (Mons Badonicus), 520; no further advance of the English for 30 years. Capture of old Sarum, 552. Battle of Deorham and capture of Bath, Gloucester, Cirencester, and Uriconium ("Wroxeter"), "the white town in the valley," near the Wrekin, 577. Descent of the West Saxons on Oxfordshire and Berkshire, 571. Extermination of the natives and stamping out of Christianity.
4. Landings in the Humber by the Angles (English), from Sleswick.

- 1 Occupation of Sherwood and the wooded country between the Trent and the Humber. The North English.
- 2 Occupation of the Soar round Ratæ ("Leicester"). The Middle English.
- 3 Occupation of the head waters of the Trent near Lichfield and Repton. The West English or Mercians, *i.e.* Borderers. Dates uncertain.

5. Landing of Ida (the Angle), and settlement at Bamborough. Foundation of kingdom of Bernicia. 547. Northward march from the Humber and foundation of Deira in Holderness and to the west of York. Deira and Bernicia made into one kingdom by Æthelfrith, 603.
6. Further settlements of the East Saxons in Essex (principal town, Colchester), of the Middle Saxons in Middlesex (principal town, London), of the East Anglians in North-folk and South-folk; between 500 and 600.
7. No regular *Heptarchy*, but seven English settlements prominent from time to time. Kent (Jutish), Sussex, Essex, Wessex (Saxon), East Anglia, Northumbria, Mercia (Anglian).

C Conversion of the English, and struggle between Northumbria the Christian, and Mercia the Heathen kingdom. 607—685. Pp. 16—34.

1. British Christianity rooted out by the English conquest.
2. Marriage of Æthelberht of Kent to Bercta, daughter of the Christian West-Frankish king, and consequent landing of

- Augustine in the isle of Thanet. 597. England once more brought into contact with Europe. Pp. 17, 18.
3. Marriage of Eadwine of Northumbria, the founder of Edinburgh, "in whose day a woman with her babe might walk scatheless from sea to sea," to the daughter of the King of Kent. Consequent conversion of Northumbria by Paulinus. 627. Pp. 18—20.
 4. The Heathen struggle. Pp. 20, 21.
 - a* Defeat of Eadwine by Penda of Mercia, at Heathfield on the Don. 633.
 - b* Defeat of the Welsh allies of the Mercians by Oswald, at Heavenfield (Heaven's field), near Hexham. 635.
 5. Activity of the Irish Church. Pp. 21—23.
 - a* Irish missionaries found among the Picts, Frisians, Burgundians.
 - b* Columba at Iona, and Aidan at Lindisfarne. 636. Conversion of Wessex.
 6. Continuation of the Heathen struggle. Pp. 23, 24.
 - a* Defeat of Oswald by Penda at Maserfield, 642, and ravaging of Northumbria.
 - b* Overthrow of Penda by Oswi at Winwæd, near Leeds, 655.
 7. Peace and growth of Christianity. 642—670. Pp. 24—30.
 - a* Ceadda of Lindisfarne (S. Chad) the missionary of Mercia.
 - b* Cuthbert the missionary of the Northumbrians, and especially of Teviotdale and Tweeddale.
 - c* Northumbrian monasteries based on the Celtic model of the clan round some one person: especially Whitby, the Westminster of Northumbria, founded by Hild the Northumbrian Deborah, and made famous by
 - 1 The beginning of English song by Caedmon, who sang "the beginning of created things, the terror of judgment, and the joys of heaven." New world of feeling opened by Christianity; "he learnt not poetry from men, nor of men, but from God."
 - 2 The Synod of Whitby to decide between the rival claims of Irish and Roman Christianity. 664. By the victory of Rome England saved from the clan system and clannish quarrels of the Irish Church, and made part of the European system. Pp. 26—29.
 - d* Theodore of Tarsus Archbishop of Canterbury. 668. Pp. 29—30.
 - 1 Organization of the Episcopate by the creation of new sees and their subordination to Canterbury.

followed at a later date by the organization of the parish system ; settled clergy taking the place of missionaries.

- 2 *Political* effect of Theodore's work. Preparation for national unity by the supremacy of Canterbury and the convening of general synods.

c Literary greatness of *Northumbria*. 700—750. Pp. 36—38.

- 1 Famous schools at Jarrow and York.

2 Bæda, *the father of English learning, English history, English theology*.

8. Growth of Mercia under Wulfhere. Pp. 30—32.

a Progress of lordship over Mid-England to London and Sussex, leading to the West-Saxon western progress to the Parret. 658.

b Industrial and moral progress seen in clearing of forests and foundation of abbeys, e.g., Peterborough, Crowland, Ely.

c Defeat of Wulfhere by the Northumbrian Ecgrith and surrender of Lincolnshire. 670.

9. Fall of Northumbria. Pp. 32—34.

a Ambition of Ecgrith. Conquest of Cumbria.

b Invasion of the Land of the Picts, north of the Forth. Defeat and death of Ecgrith at Nechtansmere. The death-blow to Northumbrian greatness. 685.

10. The work of Northumbria. The beginnings of Christianity, literature, national unity.

D The Overlordship of Mercia. 685—823. Pp. 34—42.

1. Ine of Wessex. 688—726.

a Further westward advance of the West-Saxons, including all Somerset ; the frontier guarded by a fort on the Tone, *Taunton*.

b Earliest West-Saxon code of laws. Building of Glas-tonbury Abbey, an addition to an earlier church "built by no art of man."

c Abdication, and pilgrimage to Rome. "See, how the fashion of this world passeth away." 726.

2. Æthelbald of Mercia. Pp. 35, 36.

a Invasion of Wessex and capture of Somerton. 733. Adoption of the title "*King of Britain*."

b Resistance of the Northumbrians, and defeat of Æthelbald by the West-Saxons at Burford, in Oxfordshire, 752 ; and Secandun, in Warwickshire, 755.

3. Offa of Mercia. 757—796. Pp. 39, 40.

a War with the Welsh, and capture of Pengwern, *Shrewsbury* (the Town in the Scrub). Building of Offa's dyke from the Wye to the Dee, and drawing up of

Offa's laws to settle relations between English and Welsh.

b Extending of Offa's authority, partly by battle, chiefly by peaceful means of securing influence.

4. England and the West-Franks. P. 40.

a The West-Frankish policy to strengthen the weaker kingdoms against Mercia, and so prevent a united England.

b The Court of Charles the Great (Charlemagne) a refuge for the enemies of Mercia. After Offa's death, Ecgberht restored as King of Wessex, and Eardwulf as King of Northumbria, by Frankish support. 800.

5. Fall of Mercia and rise of Wessex. Pp. 41, 42.

a Victory of Ecgberht over the Mercian King Beornwulf at Ellandun, near Salisbury, 823. Submission of Kent, East Anglia, Sussex.

b Conquest of Devon by the West-Saxons. English boundary fixed at the Tamar.

c Submission of the Mercians, and consequently of the Welsh, to Ecgberht's overlordship, 827.

d Submission of Northumberland, 827.

e Ecgberht overlord from the British Channel to the Forth. *King of the English*.

E Wessex and the Danes. 800—880. Pp. 42—58.

1. The Danes.

a Three stages of Danish Conquest.

1 Simple plundering raids. 787—855.

2 Raids followed by settlement. 855—980.

3 Political conquest. Attempt of the Kings of all Denmark to make themselves Kings of England as well. 987—1016.

b The Danish invasion a return of barbarism.

2. *First stage of Danish Conquest*. P. 43.

a Alliance between the Danes and the British against the English, checked by Ecgberht's victory at Hengestesdun in Cornwall, 835, and Æthelwulf's victory over the North Welsh, 838.

b Æthelwulf's reign taken up by battles against the Danes. Victories of the English at the mouth of the Parret, 845, and at Oclea (Oak-lea) in Surrey, 851.

3. *Second stage of Danish Conquest*. Pp. 43—45.

a Danish settlement in Northumbria. 866.

b Danish settlement in East Anglia. Murder of S. Eadmund, King of East Anglia. Burning of Ely,

Crowland, Peterborough. Mercia becomes tributary to the Danes. 870.

c Danish invasion of Wessex; defeat of the Danes at Ashdown and Wareham. 878.

d Fresh invasion of Wessex. Ælfred escapes to the isle of Athelney in the marshes of the Parret. Victory of Ælfred at Ethandun (Edington, near Trowbridge); baptism of the Danish Guthorm, king of East Anglia, and peace of Wedmore; *Northumbria, East Anglia, the Danelagh and all east of Watling Street fall to the Danes.* 879.

e The rapidity of the Danish conquest due to the weakness of the English national bond.

4. Ælfred the Great. 871—901. Pp. 45—49.

a Simple and practical, he makes the best of what is closest at hand, as in his revision of Ine's and Offa's laws.

b The good of his people the object of his reign.

1 "Every well-born youth to abide at his book till he can well understand English writing."

2 Introduction of foreign scholars, especially from the land of the West-Franks.

3 Translations and editions of the popular manuals of the day, *e.g.* the *Consolation of Boethius*, and the *History of Bede*.

4 Encouragement of exploration and voyages, to the White Sea, to India, to Jerusalem.

5 Beginning of the *English Chronicle*; the earliest monument of Teutonic prose.

c The foundation of the English navy. "He timbered long ships, swifter and steadier and eke higher than the others; some had sixty oars, some mo." 897.

5. Danish attack upon English Mercia. Pp. 49, 50.

a Danish invaders defeated by Ealdorman Æthelred at Buttington in Montgomeryshire, and prevented from uniting with North Welsh. 894.

b The Danes abandon their attack and make peace. 897.

6. Wessex and the Danelagh (*i.e.* the district occupied by the Danes). 918—942. Pp. 50, 51.

a Attack on the five Danish boroughs: Derby, Lincoln, Leicester, Stamford, Nottingham, by Æthelflæd, daughter of Ælfred, and widow of Æthelred, "the lady of the Mercians." 913—918.

b Conquest of Bedford, Huntingdon, Northampton, and all the country between the Nen and the Ouse, by Eadward the Elder. 921.

- c* The Northumbrians and Scots and British of Strathclyde "choose Eadward to father and lord." 924. Eadward King of the English and Emperor of Britain. *Emperor* because England owes no allegiance either to Eastern or Western Empire.
 - d* Rebellion of North Welsh, Northumbrians, and Scots against Æthelstan through fear of Wessex. West Welsh driven out of Exeter, 926. North Wales made tributary, 926; Scots and Danes defeated at Brunanburh (in Northumberland), 937.
 - e* Revolt of the Danes against Eadmund I. Watling Street once more the boundary of the two nations. 942.
- 7. Dunstan, the completer of the West-Saxon realm. Pp. 51—54.
 - a* Appointed Abbot of Glastonbury by Eadmund. 943.
 - b* Detaches the King of Scots from the side of the Danes by the grant of Cumberland as a fief. 945.
 - c* Banished by Eadwig, 957; recalled on Eadwig's death by his brother Eadgar, 958.
 - d* Divides Northumberland into three earldoms: Lothian, Northumberland (*i.e.* all north of the Tees), and Deira. *Lothian granted to the King of Scots.* 966.
 - e* Pursues a *national* not a West-Saxon policy. Common weights and measures, Danish customs preserved in the North: so the reproach, "He gave too much power to the Dane, and too much love to strangers."
 - f* Encourages the regular clergy as against the secular, in order to bring in higher education and better modes of life. *The abbey was schools as well as monasteries.*
- 8. The constitution of the later English kingdom. Pp. 54—56.
 - a* The *King*, more sacred than formerly, "*the Lord's anointed*," and less seen by the people, therefore more mysterious.
 - b* The old *nobility* of blood superseded by a new nobility of courtiers, the King's thegns, *i.e.* servants, who perform personal service and receive estates out of the common folk-land.
 - c* Decline of the English *Freeman*.
 - 1 No man can exist without a lord: and so the free *ceorl* becomes a villein. Due mainly to need of protection during the stress of the Danish wars.
 - 2 The Freemen prevented by distance from attending at the Witan: the National Council gradually

limited to great officers of Church and State and King's thegns.

- d* Decline of *Slavery* owing to the efforts of the Church. Slave trade forbidden by law, but not put down till the reign of William the Conqueror.

9. Fall of the West-Saxon Kingdom. Pp. 57, 58.

- a* *Third stage of the Danish Conquest.* Æthelred the Unready (*i.e.* the deaf to counsel), buys a peace from Olaf Tryggvesson, King of Norway. 991. The first payment of Danegeld.

- b* Danish attack on Kent and Wessex, the heart of the West-Saxon Realm, under Swegen Forkbeard. 997—1002.

- c* The Massacre of the Danes in Wessex on S. Brice's Day. 1002.

- d* Harrying of Wessex by Swegen. 1003—1007.

- e* Final attack of Swegen assisted by Mercia and Northumbria on Wessex. Capture of London and flight of Æthelred to Richard the Good, Duke of Normandy. 1013—1014.

F The Danish Rule. 1014—1042. Pp. 59—63.

1. Effects in England of the rule of Foreign Kings (Danes, Normans, or Angevins), which lasts till the loss of Normandy under John. 1204.

- a* Provincial differences crushed into national unity.

- b* A middle class formed by the degradation of the English lords, and the rise of traders in the towns.

- c* The priests being foreigners, religion passes from the hands of the priests to those of the people.

- d* England brought into the stream of European life.

- e* Internal peace made more secure and lasting.

2. Struggle of Eadmund Ironside against the Danes. Victory of Cnut (son of Swegen) at Assandun (Ashington) in Essex (the last of six battles) and division of England: Eadmund Lord over Wessex, Essex, East Anglia, and London; Cnut Lord over Northumbria and Mercia. Death of Eadmund. Election and Coronation of Cnut as King. 1016.

3. Cnut. 1016—1035.

- a* Foreign policy.

- 1 Attempt to make *England the head of a great Scandinavian empire.*

- 2 Lothian granted as a fief to the King of Scots; hence Edinburgh becomes the capital of Scotland, and the Scots a mixed people.

- b* Home policy.

- 1 Equal treatment of Dane and Englishman.

- 2 Division of England into four earldoms, Mercia,

Northumberland, Essex, Wessex, recognising provincial independence, while binding the nobles closer to the Crown.

- 3 Support given to the Church notwithstanding its constant opposition to the Danes.

"I have vowed to God to lead a right life in all things, to rule justly and piously my realms and subjects and to administer just judgment to all."

- 4 The establishment of internal peace.

A. Fall of the Danish rule. 1035—1042.

a Harold tears out the eyes of Ælfred, brother of Eadmund Ironside, when he attacked England from Normandy. "Never a bloodier deed done since the Danes came."

b Death of *Harthacnut*; "he died as he stood at his drink in the house of Osgod Clapa at Lambeth." 1042.

The Danes fall, from the indignation of the English at their brutality and barbarism.

G The English Restoration. 1042—1066. Pp. 63—77.

1. Edward the Confessor. Pp. 63—66.

The work of Government done first by Earl Godwine, then by Earl Harold.

a Earl Godwine. 1042—1052.

- 1 Earl Godwine, the first English statesman who is neither king nor priest.

- 2 Godwine attempts to carry out Cnut's policy of a united England in connection with the North. Finding this impossible, he supports Eadward.

- 3 The fall of Godwine, due mainly to his excessive greed for his own family. 1051.

- 4 Godwine quickly recalled as the only barrier between England and the foreign rule of the Confessor's favourites (shown even in the quarrel at Dover, for which he is banished).

b Earl Harold. 1053—1065.

- 1 Under Harold, England materially prosperous. Famous especially for gold work and embroidery.

- 2 Nobler elements of national life—literature, history, religious art—still rudimentary.

- 3 The tendency of his rule—*inaction and repose*.

2. Normandy and the Normans. 912—1066. Pp. 63—74.

a Rolf the Ganger obtains the land on either side the Seine from Charles the Simple by the Treaty of Clair-sur-Epte, 912. Baptism and vassalage of Rolf.

b William Longsword, his son, a pagan and Dane in

heart, calls in a fresh Danish colony to the Cotentin.
927—943.

- c Under Richard the Fearless, son of Longsword, the heathen pirates become feudal Christians. French spoken instead of Norse, and Norman nobles supersede the Norse freemen; *cf.* in England. E. 8. (c). 945—996.
- d First political connection between England and Normandy through the marriage of Emma, daughter of Richard the Fearless,
 - 1 to Æthelred II.
 - 2 to Cnut.
- e The Norman crusades, leading to Norman conquests in Sicily and Calabria. 1054—1090. Due mainly to the old Norse restlessness, as in the invasion of England, projected by Robert the Magnificent.
- f William the Conqueror. 1027.
 - 1 Victory over the rebellious Norman barons at Val-ès-Dunes, near Caen. 1047.
 - 2 Victory over Geoffry Martel, Count of Anjou, and the French army at Mortemer (1054) and Lisieux (1058). Acquisition of Maine (1060).
 - 3 Protection of the traders against the Norman barons, "William could never love a robber." Revolt of the barons, William's victory at Varaville.
 - 4 Reform of the Church by means of Lanfranc.
- 3. William of Normandy and the English.
 - a William receives a promise of succession from Eadward the Confessor.—*Valueless unless confirmed by the Witan.* 1052.
 - b Harold's visit to Normandy and oath to William. 1064. (Possibly he swears to marry William's daughter, and does homage to William as his future father-in-law.)
 - c William, notwithstanding Harold's election, *claims the right of presenting himself for election.* 1066.
 - d Victory of Harold at Stamford Bridge, near York, over his brother, Tostig, and Harold Hardrada of Norway. Sept. 25, 1066.
 - e Harold marches to London and collects the land-fyrd (general levy of fighting men) of the South and East of England. Oct. 1—12.
 - f Harold entrenches himself on the hill of Senlac to cover London and stop the Norman ravages. Oct. 13.
 - g *Battle of Senlac.* Oct. 14, 1066.
 - 1 The shield-wall of the English resists the Norman

attack ; *cf.* the subsequent formations at Falkirk and Waterloo.

- 2 William pretends flight, and so breaks the English line ; only the hus-carls remain firm.
- 3 Harold shot by an arrow. The hus-carls killed at their post.
- 4 William marches by Dover and Canterbury on London ; burns Southwark ; crosses the Thames at Wallingford ; forces Eadwine of Mercia and Morkere of Northumbria, supporters of Eadgar Ætheling, to submit ; is crowned by Archbishop Ealdred. **Dec. 1066.**
- 5 William rules over England east of a line from Norwich to Dorsetshire.

William the Conqueror. 1066—1087.

A Struggles of the English. Pp. 78—80.

1. A league of the western towns, headed by Exeter ; they are willing to pay tribute, but not to recognise William as King. **February, 1067.**
2. First conquest of Central and Northern England. **Summer and Autumn, 1067.**
3. *Great national revolt* in the North, West, and on Welsh borders, caused by the arrival of Swegen of Demark. **1068.**
William
 - 1 bribes the Danes to withdraw ;
 - 2 lays waste all the country between York and the Tees, partly as a punishment, partly to prevent future invasions of the Danes. A hundred thousand human beings said to have been destroyed by the consequent famine.
 - 3 takes Chester, the last English fortress. **Autumn, 1069—February, 1070.**
4. Last struggle of the English in the Ely marshes, under Hereward the Wake. **1070—1071.**

Causes of the Failure of the English Struggle.

1. Absence of men fit to lead the nation.
2. William not a self-made King, but crowned by the choice of the Witan.
3. Lack of communication. Revolts therefore put down piecemeal.
4. Norman garrisons and castles planted in all English towns, *e.g.* London, Newcastle, York.

B William and his Nobles. Pp. 80—82 and 84.

1. The older freedom, even before the conquest, partially superseded by feudalism. The soil now occupied by an army of conquerors subject to the King.

2. William keeps the nobles from being too strong for the Crown,

a by making all their vassals swear to *him personally* ;

b by keeping up the old county courts, and so preventing military rule ;

c by putting down the great earldoms ;

d by ascertaining the extent and value of all royal dues, &c., from property. Domesday Book.

The King thus becomes the *greatest landowner* in the realm ; the great difference between feudalism in England and on the Continent.

C William and the Church. (Lanfranc, Archbishop). P. 82.

1. Lanfranc, abbot of Bec, made Archbishop. The great administrator and statesman.
2. Increase of the royal power over the Church. Homage demanded from the Bishops and refused to Gregory VII.
3. Establishment of distinct ecclesiastical courts, whereas before bishops and sheriffs had presided jointly in the "hundred" court.
4. Appointment of good bishops and abbots, but *not English* ; many remain foreigners to the nation.

D William and Foreign Policy. P. 85.

1. Fear of Denmark removed by the dispersion of *Danish* fleet by mutiny and murder of S. Cnut. 1085.
2. *Scotland* kept in check by the *new Castle* upon Tyne. 1080.
3. Systematic and gradual conquest of *Wales* begun by means of Barons of the Marches.
4. Revolt of William's eldest son Robert, who wishes to be Duke of *Normandy* in his father's lifetime. 1077.
5. Quarrel of William with *France* ; death injury at Mantes, dies at Rouen.

(Remark the desertion of the King after his death, and the strange scene at his funeral.)

E Character. Pp. 72 and 83.

1. "Stark man he was, and men had great awe of him."
E.g. mutilation of prisoners at Alençon. Refusal to bury Harold. Harrying of Northumbria. Laying waste of Hampshire to make the New Forest ("he loved the wild deer as if he had been their father"). Building of castles. The murder of Waltheof, and in a lesser degree the arrest and imprisonment of Odo.
2. "He could never love a robber. He made good peace in the land, so that a man might fare over his realm with a bosom full of gold."
3. "He was mild to them that loved God." Liberal tendency of his government.

- a* Introduction of and shelter to Jews, hence improvement in architecture, and in physical science, through connection with Jewish schools in Spain.
- b* Abolition of the punishment of death.
- c* Abolition of slave trade at Bristol through the efforts of Lanfranc and Wulfstan.
- d* Upbringing of his youngest son as an *English* Prince.
- 4. Gradual deterioration in his character from the beginning of English revolts. Three great crimes :—
 - a* Harrying of Northumbria.
 - b* Murder of Waltheof.
 - c* Making of New Forest.

He won England wrongfully and had to keep it wrongfully.

William the Red King. 1087—1100.

A William and the English. Pp. 85—87.

William driven to rely on loyalty of his *English* subjects in order to make head against the barons, who support his elder brother Robert. Capture of Rochester by an *English* army.

B William and the Church.

1. Vacant sees not filled up, to keep the revenues for the royal treasury.
2. Opposition and banishment of Anselm, the successor of Lanfranc at Bec and at Canterbury. The living teacher, the firm preacher of righteousness, the first Christian philosopher. (Pp. 69, 70.) Spirit of independence in the nation begins to revive at finding a man who can withstand the King.

C William and Foreign Policy.

1. *Normandy* held in pledge from his brother Robert. 1096—1100.
2. Edgar, son of Malcolm, made King of *Scotland* as an English vassal. Cumbria secured by the fortress of Carlisle.
3. A too rapid advance into Wales checked by the Welsh in the passes of Snowdon.

D Character.

"He feared God but little, and man not at all."

Henry the Scholar. 1100—1135.

A Henry and the English. Pp. 87, 88.

1. Brought up from his birth as an *English* prince.
2. Thrown on *English* for support against his brother Robert who claims to unite Normandy and England. *Normandy* is won and disgrace of Senlac avenged by *English* victory at Tenchebray. 1106.

3. His *Charter* the first *written* embodiment of the old *customary* restraint on despotism.
4. His marriage with Matilda, great granddaughter of Eadmund Ironside. Taunts of the Norman nobles, "*Godric and Godgiftu*," but joy of the English people.

B Henry's Administration. Pp. 92, 93.

1. Clerks of Royal Chapel formed into a body of Secretaries.
2. *Justiciar* (Lieutenant-General of kingdom) and *King's Court* which permanently represents the Great Council of the nation, and is thus
 - 1 A court to revise and register laws, and to give them a formal "counsel and consent."
 - 2 The highest court of appeal.
 - 3 A court to collect and assess revenue, known as the Court of Exchequer, from the room in which meetings are held.

C Political Progress of Nation. Pp. 88—91.

1. Gradual fusion of Norman and Saxon in towns. Gilbert Beket, a Norman, becomes Portreeve of London.
2. Charters confirming the old rights of freedom of *speech, justice, and meeting in arms* granted to towns grown up upon the *royal demesne*.
3. Transition from pure serfage to comparative freedom in towns grown up round *abbeys or castles*.

D Religious Progress of Nation. Pp. 91, 92.

1. Revival of religious feeling in the nation shown in the reception of the austere Cistercians.
2. Increased power of leading bishops. Anselm, Roger of Salisbury, Henry of Winchester, Theobald, and later Thomas (Beket) of Canterbury.

E Difficulties of Succession.

1. Loss of Prince William in White Ship. 1120.
2. Hatred of the King to Robert's son William Clito, the natural heir, who is supported by France and Anjou.
3. Marriage of Matilda to Geoffry the Handsome of Anjou, to disarm his hostility. 1127.
But
 - a The hostility between Anjou and Normandy continues.
 - b The English barons consider their assent needful for Matilda's marriage.
4. Death of William Clito in Flanders. 1128.

F History of Anjou. Pp. 94—97.

1. Foundation of the race by Tortulf the Forester in the days of the Danish invasion. 870.
2. Fulc the Red adds Western to Eastern Anjou. 868.

3. Fulc the Good. "A King unlearned is a crowned ass." 938.
4. Fulc the Black. (He burns his wife and harnesses his son like a beast.) Wins Touraine and Maine. 987—1040.
5. Geoffry Martel captures Tours. Stopped by William the Conqueror on the Norman frontier. 1054. Maine becomes part of Normandy, 1060.
6. Fulch Rechin, weak and profligate.
7. Fulc of Jerusalem, father of Geoffry the Handsome. 1109.

G Character.

"The peace lover." "Peace he made for man and beast."

Stephen of Blois. 1135—1154. Pp. 97—100.

- A Stephen, son of Adela, daughter of the Conqueror, the nearest male heir, elected King by *City of London* in absence of the Council of the Nation.

B Chief Events of his Reign.

1. 1136—1138. Years of peace secured by the government of Roger, Bishop of Salisbury (the Justiciar).
2. 1138. David of Scotland, the uncle of Matilda, defeated at Northallerton. *Battle of the Standard*.
3. 1139. Arrest of Bishop of Salisbury (the Justiciar) and of Bishop of Lincoln for building strong castles, and consequent collapse of all government.
4. The West of England declares for Matilda, *London* and the East for Stephen.
5. 1141. Stephen defeated at Lincoln, kept as prisoner at Gloucester.
6. 1141. Matilda enters London, is received as *Lady*, but, disregarding the old city privileges, has to fly.
7. 1146. Matilda besieged at Oxford, escapes on ice, and so to Normandy.
8. 1153. Henry (Duke of Normandy, Count of Anjou and Touraine, and married to the Duchess of Aquitaine) lands in England. Treaty of Wallingford, securing the destruction of castles, the banishment of foreign mercenaries, the recognition of Henry and Stephen as heirs to one another.
9. 1154. Death of Stephen.

- C Character of Reign. Misery of people and power of barons. *Stephen no king but the first of the barons*. The one great development of feudalism in England.
Nature of feudal system throughout Europe.

1. Originally for defensive purposes. Service and *homage* given; *fiefs* and protection received.
2. Gradually almost all land is held on these terms, *i.e.* is *feudal*; little remains free or *allodial* (family domain land).

Vassals get vassals of their own. Kingdoms become camps.

3. Different kinds of homage (by which the vassal becomes the man—(homo)—of his lord):—

a Liege homage (Ligare). Personal service. Connection with lord can never be separated.

b Simple homage. Service can be done by a substitute. Connection can be broken by giving up fief.

4. Royal power eclipsed by that of powerful barons.

Nature of Feudalism in England.

a Tenants in capite, holding directly from the King.

b Mesne lords, not holding directly from the King.

a were much the more numerous and wealthy, hence power of the Crown in England was comparatively great, and that of barons little. (Compare above—"William and the Nobles.")

D Condition of the People.

Utter misery. "They hanged up men by their feet or thumbs; they writhed knotted strings round their head till they went into the brain; many thousands they afflicted with hunger."

E Influence of the Church.

1. By their alternate depositions of Stephen and Matilda, the Church vindicates the right of the people to declare sovereigns unworthy of the throne.

2. Archbishop Theobald settles the terms of peace.

"To the Church Henry owed his crown and England its deliverance."

Henry II. 1154—1189.

("The hardest worker of his time.")

A Physical and Mental Characteristics. P. 101.

1. Physical strength combined with restlessness ("on his legs from morning to night"), passing at times into great excitement. "A lion and more ferocious than a lion."
2. Little reverence for past (as in his sweeping reforms and irreligious temper), or sympathy with the growing ideas of his own day (as in his attempt to found an empire which had no national bond to connect it.) But immense powers of work and organization.

Henry's Foreign Possessions. P. 102.

1. *Anjou and Touraine*, from his father.
2. *Normandy and Maine*, from his mother.

3. *Aquitaine* and *Poitou*, with his wife, Eleanor, the divorced wife of Lewis VII. of France.

C Henry and the Church. Pp. 102—105.

1. Thomas Beket (the confidant of Archbishop Theobald, and afterwards Henry's chief minister) made Archbishop of Canterbury. 1162. Breach between the Archbishop and the King on the question of clerical offenders.
2. Constitutions of Clarendon (in Wiltshire). "A re-enactment in most parts of the system of the Conqueror." 1164.
 - a* Clerics, after conviction and degradation in their own courts, to be handed over to lay courts.
 - b* The King to approve the election of bishops.
 - c* No tenant *in capite* to be excommunicated without the King's leave.
 - d* No serf's son to be admitted to orders without his lord's consent.

With regard to *a*:—The lay courts were courts of men often in conflict with the clergy, always jealous of them; but the clergy were depraved. See the attacks made on them later by Walter de Map, Langland, Chaucer.

With regard to *b*:—Notice the danger of robbing the Church of its spiritual independence. Compare the French King and Pope at Avignon: and the Russian Church.

With regard to *c*:—Notice the danger of robbing the Church of its power of moral censure of powerful culprits.

With regard to *d*:—Notice the danger of destroying the one democratic society which received all men as equal. (Mill's essay on "Michelet's France.")

3. Contest of Beket with King. 1164—1170.

- a* Beket retracts the consent he had given to the Constitutions.
- b* Vexatious charges of embezzlement brought against Beket at Northampton; he escapes to Flanders. 1164.
- c* Great violence shown both by Henry and Beket. Lewis VII. of France supports Beket. General weariness of the struggle.
- d* Under fear of excommunication, Henry allows Beket to return. 1170.
- e* Murder of Beket. "No traitor, but a priest of God." 29th Dec. 1170.
- f* Beket becomes the most popular of English saints; but the *victory rests with the King* (aided by the

separation growing up between the literary class and the Church).

D Henry and the Barons. Pp. 105, 106.

1. The military service of the lesser barons changed into a money payment or "scutage" (shield-money). Thus the King gets money to *keep mercenaries*. 1180.
2. The office of *sheriff* taken from the greater barons, and filled by lawyers and courtiers. 1170.
3. Rebellion of barons, headed by Henry's sons, Henry, Richard, Geoffry, and supported by France, Flanders, Scotland.
Public penance of Henry to atone for the murder of Thomas Beket.
Scotch King, William the Lion, defeated and captured at Alnwick. (Scotch crown for a time held of England.)
English barons on this lay down their arms.
His son Henry and the French defeated at Rouen by mercenaries.
Richard and Geoffry, in Aquitaine, submit. 1174.
4. The Assize (code) of Arms. Every freeman, as of old, compelled to bear arms. Thus the King has at his disposal *the universal levy of the armed nation*. 1181.

E Henry and the Law. Pp. 106, 107.

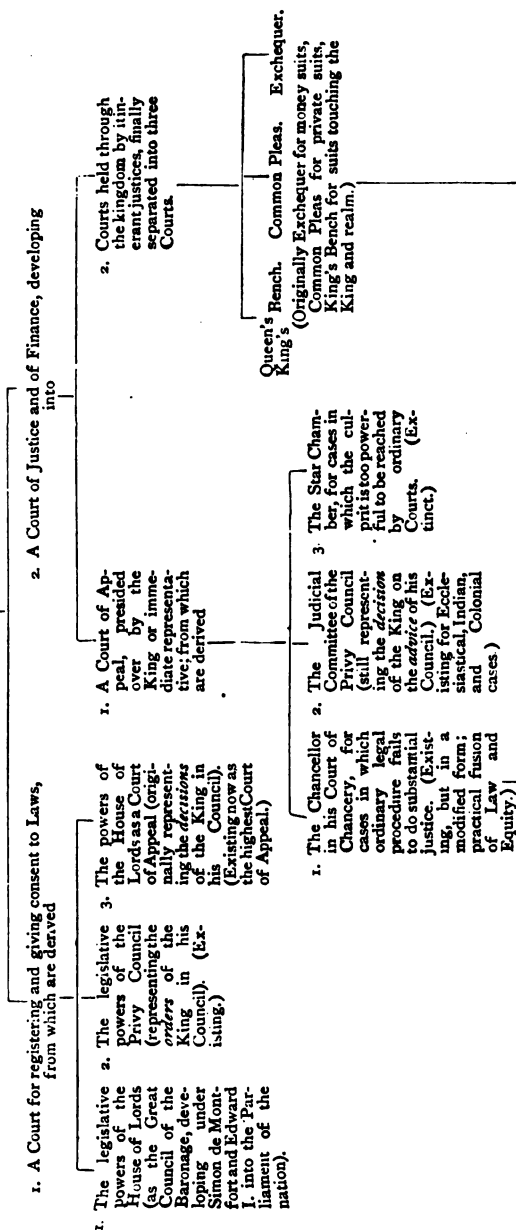
"Initiation of the rule of law."

1. Assize of Clarendon. 1166.
a Frankpledge, *i.e.*, Mutual security, revived.
b Origin of *Trial by Jury*.
1 Twelve men of each hundred, and four from each township, to present criminals for trial by ordeal. Hence our modern "Grand Jury."
2 After presentation by the jury prisoners are tried no longer by *compurgation*, *i.e.*, the voluntary oath of neighbours, but by ordeal, till 1216, when the abolition of the ordeal paves the way for the petty jury.
3 Witnesses of the particular fact added to the general jury (in the reign of Edward IV. See Edward IV. A 3.)
4 Later separation of these two classes. The witnesses cease to have judicial powers, and the general jury cease to be witnesses, and are *only judges of fact; the modern jury*.
2. Assize of Northampton (after barons' revolt). 1176.
Division of England into six circuits, each with three justices, who represent *the King's Court* (Curia Regis).
"Before our sovereign Lord the King." Appeal permitted to the King in Council.

- a After the Charter, the King's Court, when not acting as a Court of Appeal, is divided permanently into—
 - 1 Exchequer, for *suits concerning the revenue*. (This division had begun in reign of Henry I.)
 - 2 Common Pleas, for decision of *private suits*.
 - 3 King's Bench, for *suits concerning the King and realm: i.e.*, for all that does not belong to the other two. The main trunk of the old court.
- b From the King's Court acting as a Court of Appeal are derived the judicial powers of the Privy Council, the equitable jurisdiction of the Chancellor, and (unconstitutionally) the Star Chamber (a criminal court for cases in which justice is baffled in the lower courts).
- c Further, from the King's Court as it develops with the growth of the Great Council of the nation (which it always represents) are derived the legislative powers of the Privy Council, and the judicial powers of the House of Lords.
- d Table to illustrate the origin of the English Law Courts.

CURIA REGIS (the King's Court) or Great Council of the Baronage, presided over by the King, or his representative, the Justiciar,

being



These four Courts (Chancery, Queen's Bench, Common Pleas, Exchequer) now consolidated in the Supreme Court of Judicature.

High Court of Appeal.

^a Chancery Division.
^b Queen's Bench Division.
^c Common Pleas Division.
^d Exchequer Division.
^e Probate and Admiralty Division.

F Henry and Ireland. Pp. 431—433.

1. Decay of Ireland from eighth to twelfth century.
 - a Religiously.* No organization in Church.
 - b Politically.* No central authority. Civilization destroyed in the war with the Danes. Nothing left but some coast towns (Dublin, Waterford), Danish rather than Irish, and a number of isolated "septs" (communities resembling enlarged families).
2. Henry forms the idea of attacking Ireland, nominally to put down the *slave trade from England*, and to bring Ireland into the Latin obedience.
3. The conquest of Ireland really begun by Strongbow (Earl of Pembroke), *acting as mercenary of Dermot, King of Leinster.* 1169.
4. Henry passes over to Ireland, and begins *erection of castles.* 1171. Recalled by troubles at home. 1172.
5. The English pale (boundary) consists of Drogheda, Dublin, Wexford, Waterford, Cork: so the country is split into two halves, whose conflict has never ceased.

G Henry and his Sons. P. 108.

1. Richard (now his eldest son), governor of Aquitaine, does homage to Philip of France. 1189.
2. Burning of Le Mans, Henry's birthplace. 1189.
3. Henry discovers his son John to be among the rebels. "Now let things go as they will: I care no more for myself or the world."

Richard Lion Heart. 1189—1199.**A As a Crusader. 1189—1194.** Pp. 108—111.

1. First Crusade, 1096. Preached by Peter the Hermit, and ends in the setting up of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem, under Godfrey of Bouillon. 1099.
2. Second Crusade, 1137. Preached by S. Bernard, led by Conrad, King of the Romans, and Lewis VII. of France, and ends in utter failure. 1148.
3. Third Crusade followed the capture of Jerusalem by the Seljuk Turks, 1187. Led by Richard of England, Philip Augustus of France, and Frederick Barbarossa I. of Germany. Less religious earnestness than the earlier Crusades.

Principal events:—

- a* Great sale of town charters, fortresses, and even the vassalage of Scotland, to raise money.
- b* Massacre and persecution of Jews in England, especially at York, severely punished by Richard. 1189.
- c* Quarrels between Richard and Philip Augustus, and

war with Cyprus. **Winter, 1190, and Spring, 1191.**

d Siege and capture of Acre. Massacre of 5,000 Turkish hostages.

e Victory of Richard over Saladin, at Azotus, neutralized by Richard's quarrel with the Duke of Austria.

f Richard marches on Jerusalem, but has to retreat through revolt of his army. **1192.** End of Crusade.

Great acts of bravery, made useless by quarrels, and tarnished by cruelty.

g Richard's captivity in Austria through the enmity of Duke Leopold, and accusation before the Diet of the Empire, at Worms. **December, 1192—February, 1194.**

h Richard does homage (even for England) to the Emperor, and is liberated.

B As a King.

1. *England* four years without a ruler, and exhausted by taxes for the King's ransom. **1190—1194.**

2. Richard and his enemies. **1194—1199.**

a *John* intrigues with Philip II. of *France* against Richard.

b *Aquitaine* rises in revolt.

c *Normandy* has no loyalty to, or fellow feeling with, the *Anjou* King.

3. Richard's measures against his enemies. **1194—1199.**

a *Flanders* detached from France by bribes.

b *Britanny* and *Champagne* stirred up to revolt against France.

c Alliance set on foot with *Germany* against France in consequence of the election of Otto, Richard's nephew, by the Welfs as King of the Romans. **1197.**

d *Normandy* secured by building of Château Gaillard (Saucy Castle) south of the valley of the Gambon at Gaillon, on the left bank of the Seine. **1197.**

4. Money required to enable Richard to act against Philip. In trying to get the treasure-trove at Chalus, Richard is killed. **1199.**

C Character.

1. A bold and cool statesman. "*The devil is loose; take care of yourself.*" Compare in B 2 and 3.

3. His three great faults: self-indulgence, violence, indifference to honour.

John Lackland. 1199—1216.

A John and Foreign Policy. Pp. 111, 112.

1. Loss of Normandy.

a John recognised by *England, Normandy, and Aquitaine*.

Anjou, Maine, Touraine, backed by *France*, recognise *Arthur*, son of *Geoffrey*.

b Capture and murder of *Arthur*; possibly by *John*. 1203.

c Subsequent invasion and conquest of Normandy by *France*. Normans prefer *Philip*, their *overlord*, to *John*, an Angevin, and a *foreigner*.

d Capture of *Château Gaillard*. 1204.

B 2. John and the Church. Pp. 119—122.

a Barons and Prelates refuse aid for recovery of Normandy. 1205.

b Innocent III. overrules the English elections to the see of Canterbury, and appoints *Stephen Langton*.

Opposition of *John* to this usurpation. 1206.

c The Interdict. "The church bells are silent, the dead lie unburied on the ground." 1208.

d Excommunication, 1209, and deposition, 1212, of *John*.

France, attempting to carry out the Pope's sentence of deposition, checked by English fleet. 1212.

e *John's* submission; "he becomes the Pope's man;" due to the discovery of the French conspiracies among the barons in England; possibly also to get the Papal sanction to his league of Flanders, Poitou, Germany, against France and its allies, Scotland, Wales, and the disaffected English nobles. 1215.

3. *John's* great league against France broken by the defeat of *Bouvines*. 1214.

C The Great Charter. 1215. Pp. 122—125.

1. Before the battle of *Bouvines* Archbishop *Langton* appears as the champion of the old English liberties ("*Laws of Edward the Confessor*" and "*Charter of Henry I.*") against personal despotism of *John*.

2. After *Bouvines* *John* is alone in the nation. Barons, prelates, lawyers, people, all against him. Voluntary surrender of *London, Exeter, Lincoln*, to the barons, "*the army of God and Holy Church*;" march of troops from *North*; promise of aid from *Scotland* and *Wales*. 1214.

3. Meeting of John and the barons at Runnymede, on the Thames, between Staines and Windsor, and unconditional surrender of John. The Great Charter—discussed, agreed to, signed in one day. **June 15, 1215.**
4. The nature and provisions of the Great Charter :—
 - a Based on Charter of Henry I., and judicial reforms of Henry II. Not an introduction of new principles, but *a change from unwritten tradition to written legislation.*
 - b Rights of Englishmen to *justice*. "To no man will we sell, or deny, or delay, right or justice."
 - 1 *Judges of Assize* to hold their circuits annually.
 - 2 *King's Court* for Common Pleas not to follow the king's wanderings, but to sit in a fixed place. Thus is formed the Court of Common Pleas for all private suits.
 - c Rights of Englishmen to *security of person and property*. Means of actual livelihood to be left even to the worst.

"No freeman shall be *seized or imprisoned, or dispossessed, or outlawed, or in any way brought to ruin, save by legal judgment of his peers or by the law of the land.*"
 - d Right of Englishmen to *good government*.
 - 1 "No *scutage or aid* (other than the three customary feudal aids) shall be imposed in our realm *save by the common council of the realm.*" *Barons, prelates, tenants in Capite* to be summoned to the council at least *forty days before.*
 - (a) A stop thus put to arbitrary exactions of late kings. (*e.g.*, Carrucage—*i.e.*, a tax upon carts (a re-imposition of the land-tax or Danegeld). Taxes upon personal property, such as wool, church-plate, &c.)
 - (b) The customary *feudal aids* restricted to three occasions : knighting of King's eldest son, marriage of King's eldest daughter, ransom of King's person from captivity.
 - 2 *Wardship*. Heirs during minority and widows protected against unequal or compulsory marriages.
 - 3 *Towns* secured :—
 - (a) in charters of freedom of *speech, justice, and meeting in arms* (see Henry I., C 2) ;
 - (b) in freedom of journeying and trade for *foreign merchants* ;
 - (c) in uniformity of weights and measures for the whole country.
 - e *Church* secured in free election to bishoprics. Crown to issue a *congé d'élire*, and to confirm election.

f A council of twenty-four barons to enforce observance of Charter, if necessary by force of arms. "*They have given me four-and-twenty overkings.*"

D John's Attempts to evade Charter. Pp. 125, 126.

1. Gets *Pope Innocent III.*, as his *overlord*, to annul Charter and suspend Langton.
2. Hires *mercenaries*, captures *Rochester*, lays England waste up to *Berwick*, only *London* withstands him. 1215, 1216.
3. The barons call in *French* aid, *April 1216*; John's *French* mercenaries refuse to fight against *French Dauphin*, *Lewis*: *Lewis* enters *London*, John falls back on *Wales*, rallies, relieves *Lincoln*, marches to relieve *Dover*, is cut off by the tide in the Wash, dies at *Newark*. 1217.

E Character.

"The ablest and the most ruthless of the Angevins." P. 118.

1. *Ability.*

a In war. Defence of *Château Gaillard* (p. 112), defeat and capture of *Arthur* at *Mirabeau*, defeat of barons in his last struggle.

b In diplomacy. Successful struggle with the papacy; alliance with the papacy to crush discontent in England; great league against France.

2. *Ruthlessness.*

a Conduct to his own family. Rebelled against his father and his brother; believed to have murdered his nephew; divorced his first wife and cousin *Isabella* of *Gloucester*.

b Conduct to his subjects. Cruel punishments (as in crushing the *Archdeacon* of *Norwich* under a cope of lead for acting on the excommunication), no sense of national honour (as in becoming the *Pope's* man), faithlessness (as in attempts to evade Charter), shamelessness (as in his marriage to *Isabella* of *Angoulême*), espoused to the *Count de la Marche*.

"*Foul as it is, hell itself is defiled by the fouler presence of John.*"

F Effect of loss of Normandy on the Nation. Pp. 112 and 121.

1. *The unification of the English people.* Loss of foreign possessions completes amalgamation of Norman and Saxon.

Even before this, in reign of *Henry II.*, "*sic permixtæ erant nationes ut vix discerni posset, quis Anglicus, quis Normannus esset genere.*"

2. The winning of the Great Charter. To win the Charter *all classes* (barons, prelates, traders, peasants) join together to take advantage of John's defeat.

G State of Literature under the Norman and Angevin Kings.

Pp. 113—117.

1. Gradual separation of the literary class from the Church.
 - a* Anselm's influence on England not theological or metaphysical (as in France), but *historical*.
 - b* William of Malmesbury; the first of the Court historians; distinguished by departure from ecclesiastical annalistic model, supply of official documents, freedom from ecclesiastical bias.
 - c* The growth of romance seen in the Arthurian legends preserved by Geoffry of Monmouth, opposed by the Clerics with their legend of the San Graal, and christianised by Walter de Map.
2. Direct attack of the literary class upon the Church, as in Walter de Map's "Bishop Goliath," supporting Henry II. in his struggle with Becket.
3. Attack of the literary class upon the Government in the reign of Henry II., as in the pamphlets of Gerald de Barri (the beginning of political pamphlets)—on the conquest of Ireland—an account of Wales.
4. Revival of the English tongue. Layamon, a priest, at Earnley, near Radstone. "It came in mind to him that he would tell the noble deeds of England, and whence they came who first had English land." 1200. Since Stephen's reign, when the English Chronicle died out, English had only been written in small religious works.

H Oxford. Pp. 127—136.

1. A concentration of the nation's young life.
When Oxford draws knife,
England's soon at strife.
2. The European Universities the great assertors of intellectual kinship against the Feudal principles of local isolation and nobility of birth.
3. The European Universities the great assertors of intellectual inquiry against the dogmatism of the Church; till reclaimed for the Church by the Friars. This tendency of Oxford best shown in Roger Bacon. 1214—1292.
 - a* Bacon introduces the science of Optics.
 - b* After forty years of teaching, seeing the old enthusiasm for learning dead, literature and science neglected, he renounces the world and joins the Franciscans.
 - c* Forbidden by the Brotherhood to publish, he obtains permission and invitation from the Pope, Clement IV. Publication of the *Opus Majus*. 1267. "A map of existing knowledge and the means for improving it." "The Encyclopædia and *Novum Organum* of the thirteenth century."
 - d* His work unappreciated by his own century and even by the Pope.

Henry III. 1216—1272.

A The King's early years. The government of the Earl Mareschal, Langton, and Hubert de Burgh. 1216—1232.

1. **William of Pembroke**, the *Earl Mareschal*, a firm supporter of the Charter. Pp. 126, 127.

French army defeated at *Lincoln*, by the Earl Mareschal. **May 1, 1217.** "The fair of Lincoln."

French fleet defeated in Channel by sailors of the Cinque ports and the Justiciar, Hubert de Burgh.

Treaty of Lambeth and *expulsion of French*. 1217.

Fresh issue of the Charter. Pp. 137—139.

2. **Archbishop Langton.**

The Charter the great object of his life. 1217—1228.

Addition of a separate *Charter of the Forest*. No man to lose life or limb for poaching. 1217. Confirmation of Great Charter. 1225. No legate to be sent to England in Langton's life.

3. **Hubert de Burgh.** Champion of order rather than of freedom. Foreign policy, national and English. England for the English. 1217—1232.

a Struggle of the old baronage, who held the centre of England, *for feudal independence*, crushed by *Hubert*, who takes *Bedford* and hangs the garrison. 1228.

b Hubert's struggle with Pandulf (the legate) and the *Court of Rome*.

1 The Pope demands a tithe from the whole realm. 1228.

2 Italian priests appointed to English livings.

3 National discontent and assaults on Papal Commissioners, encouraged by Hubert. 1231.

c Hubert's purely *National* and *English* policy.

1 Invitations to the King from Norman barons rejected. 1229.

2 Henry's campaigns in Poitou opposed and thwarted. 1299, 1230.

d Hubert's fall brought about by influence of the Pope and the war party. 1232.

B The Government of the Foreign Favourites. 1232—1258. Pp. 139—143.

1. Henry's desire to reconquer Normandy and the lost French possessions. The influence of his mother, and of his wife, Eleanor of Provence, paramount.

a Poitevins, Bretons, and Provençals fill all the honours and offices of the Court. "*We have nothing to do with the law of England.*"

- b* War with France to get possession of Poitou. Defeat at *Taillebourg*. Guienne nearly lost to England. 1242.

2. Gross Misgovernment.

- a* English livings filled by *Italian* absentees—sometimes Italian boys.
- b* *Extravagance* of King. One sixth of royal revenues given in pensions to foreigners; the debts of the Crown four times its annual income.
- c* *Papal taxation* of the clergy; Archbishop Edmund (Rich) retires in despair.
- d* Crown debts further increased by acceptance of the Pope's tender of the Sicilian crown to Henry's second son, Edmund; England to pay the expenses of the conquest of the kingdom. 1255.
- e* *Great and continued exactions and tallages* from the towns, "contrary to their known customs and liberties."
- f* Ineffectual invasion of *Wales* by Prince Edward; great misery in the Border. 1257.

C Simon de Montfort and the Barons' War. 1258—1265. Pp. 146—154.

1. Early life of Simon de Montfort.

- a* Earl of Leicester in right of his mother. Marries Henry's sister Eleanor. 1238.
- b* Appointed Governor of Gascony. Unpopular from his strict justice, but supported by the Barons. 1248—1252.
- c* Returns to England. 1253.

2. De Montfort's character. Patience and constancy. He waits patiently through ten years of tyranny (1248—1258) and then "stands like a pillar." "*I would fight, were I and my sons left to fight alone.*"

3. De Montfort's struggle for English freedom.

- a* Great Council of the Barons summoned at Oxford, through the influence of the newly-elected knights of the shire. See C 3, *d* (2). 1258. Irritation produced by the King's exactions for his Sicilian expedition, the disasters in Wales, and the pressure of famine.

The provisions of Oxford ordained by the first royal proclamation in English.

- 1 Justiciar, Chancellor, Treasurer, to give an account to a *new Council of State* of twenty-four, half appointed by the King, half by the Barons.
- 2 A permanent council of *fifteen* to advise the King.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 3 The Great Council of the Nation (*Parliament*) to meet three times whether summoned by the King or not.
 - 4 The Commonalty to elect twelve honest men to meet the Parliament (Great Council) on each occasion.
- b* Acts of the new Council.
- 1 Payments to *Rome* stopped.
 - 2 Peace with *France*. Claim to Normandy, Anjou, Touraine, Maine, Poitou, given up.
 - 3 Attempt of the Earl of Gloucester and a party of the barons to make a governing clique of barons and a nation of serfs. Union of this feudal party and King against De Montfort and the earnest reformers. Tower of London seized by Henry. **1261.**
- c* De Montfort's struggle with the King and the feudal party, in which he is backed by the "Communes" (*i.e.*, the municipal governments of large English towns).
- 1 De Montfort takes arms and besieges Dover, Prince Edward being absent in Wales. **1263.**
 - 2 Arbitration of the King of France. The Provisions of Oxford annulled in the "*Mise of Amiens*." **January, 1264.**
 - 3 Henry's forces victorious over the country. Only *London* loyal to the Provisions.
 - 4 De Montfort and the *Londoners* defeat and capture Henry at *Lewes*. **May 14, 1264.**
- d* De Montfort's policy.
- 1 The political principles of the patriots as stated by the Friars and schoolmen.
 - (a) Constitutional restrictions on power of King. "It is one thing to rule according to a King's duty, another to destroy a kingdom by resisting the law."
 - (b) Right of the whole nation to decide its own affairs. "*They who are ruled by the laws, know the laws best*;" and about their own affairs they will act with an eye to their own peace."
 - (c) Right of the nation to select administrators of justice. "It concerns the community to see what sort of men ought justly to be chosen for the weal of the realm."
 - 2 His political measures.
 - (a) Supreme power to reside in King assisted by council.
 - (b) Two burghers summoned to Parliament from each town. Commencement of what is now

the *borough* franchise. Two knights already summoned (1254) from each county to represent the smaller tenants. Commencement of what is now called the *county* franchise.

e De Montfort's fall.

1 The *people* alienated by the constraint put upon King.

2 The *barons* greedy for the spoils of victory alienated by his strict justice.

3 De Montfort cut off in Wales by Prince Edward. Battle of Evesham. August 3, 1265.

Death of De Montfort, "the Righteous Earl," "the Founder of the House of Commons."

D Death of the King. November 16, 1272.

Edward I. 1272—1307.

The first *national* King with *purely national* aims.

A His attempt to make one British Government by the annexation of Wales and Scotland.

1. The history of Wales. Pp. 155—163.

a Wales submits to the overlordship

1 of Mercia (under Offa)

2 of Wessex.

b The Welsh combine with the Danes in their attacks upon Wessex.

c English supremacy re-asserted by Harold.

d William the Conqueror curbs the Welsh by means of the barons of the Marches.

e The Welsh rise against William Rufus; William pressing into North Wales is checked by famine and mountains.

f Conquest of South Wales under Henry I. English landings in Glamorganshire, Cardiganshire; Flemish and English settlement at Milford Haven.

g Resistance of the "Lords of Snowdon" to Henry II. and John.

h Outburst of Welsh poetry in the twelfth century—gorgeous, marvellous, above all sympathetic with nature, and pure.

i The annexation of Wales. 1282.

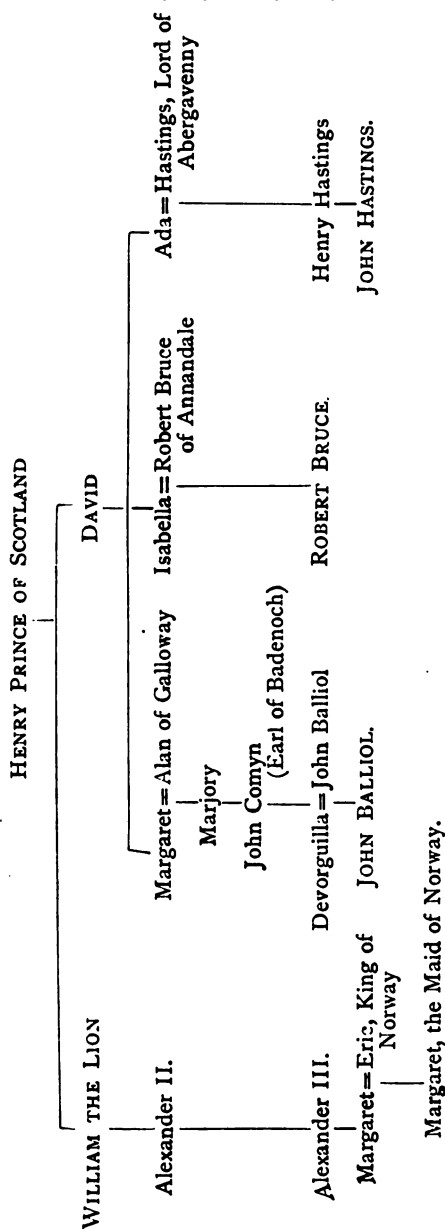
1 The "lords of *Snowdon*" become "Princes of *Wales*." 1287.

"Their Lord they shall praise, their speech they shall keep, their land they shall lose,—except wild Wales."

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 2 Edward defeats the Welsh and annexes to England the country as far as Conway. 1277.
 - 3 Llewellyn renews the struggle, is slain on the Wye. 1282.
 - 4 Henceforward no serious trouble from Wales.
2. The attempt to annex Scotland. 1290—1305. Pp. 178—187.
- a Scotland an aggregate of four races.
 - 1 The Angles between the *Forth and the Tweed*.
 - 2 The Welsh between the *Solway and the Clyde*.
 - 3 The Picts *north of the Forth and the Clyde*.
 - 4 The Scots, Irish in blood, in *S. W. Argyle*.
 These four races unified by the Danish invasions.
 - b Relations between England and the Scot Kings previous to Edward I.
 - 1 Commendation of Scots beyond the Forth to Eadward the elder as "father and lord." 924.
Not a feudal vassalage, but a military convention between a stronger and a weaker people.
 - 2 Grant of Strathclyde to Scot King on feudal tenure. 945.
 - 3 Grant of northern Northumbria (*i.e.*, the Lothians) by Cnut doubtful whether on feudal tenure—as in 2—or on "commendation"—as in 1.
 - 4 The Scotch Court in consequence fixed at Edinburgh, which becomes the head-quarters of discontented Englishmen. This is stopped by the marriage of Matilda to Henry I.: after which David of Scotland appears as *the first noble of the English Court*. (See Stephen, B 1.)
 - 5 Capture of William the Lion at Alnwick. 1175.
Scotch Crown held of England.
 - 6 Scotland re-purchases her independence from Richard Lion Heart. (See Richard, C 3, b.)
 - 7 Proposed marriage between "the Maid of Norway," grandchild of Scotch King (Alexander III.), and son of Edward I. Scotland to remain a separate and free kingdom. Death of "the Maid." 1290.
 - c First conquest of Scotland. 1290—1296.
 - 1 Disputed succession between Balliol, Bruce, and Hastings, referred to Edward. Thus some sort of overlordship is recognised. Edward however claims and assumes *the full rights of a feudal suzerain for all Scotland*, decides in favour of Balliol. 1291.
 - 2 Edward treats Balliol not only as a dependent King, but as a *feudal vassal*.

CLAIMANTS TO THE SCOTCH CROWN.



ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- (a) Enforces *right of appeal* from Scotland to England.
- (b) Summons Scotch nobles against France. 1293.
- 3 Edward, to enforce his orders, attacks Berwick, and massacres the citizens. Total ruin of the town. Takes *Edinburgh, Stirling, Perth*, imprisons Balliol. 1296.
- 4 Government intrusted to Warrenne, Earl of Surrey.
- d Second conquest of Scotland. 1297—1305.
 - 1 The Scotch peasants, especially those on the east coast north of the Tay, rise in revolt under *Wallace*.
 - (a) Wallace, deservedly the national hero as the first to claim *freedom as a national right*.
 - (b) Battle of Stirling. 1297. *Death-blow to feudalism*. "The peasant can fight as well as the knight."
 - (c) Battle of Falkirk. 1298. Wallace's foot-soldiers drawn up in *squares*, as at *Senlac* and *Waterloo*; thrown at last into confusion by Edward's archers; but Edward remains master of the ground he stands on, and no more.
 - 2 Balliol withdraws to France (1299). A regency under John Comyn and Robert Bruce (supported by France) continues the struggle.
 - 3 Scotland deserted by France, owing to a quarrel between the French King Philip IV. (Le Bel), and Pope Boniface VIII. Capture of Stirling, and conquest of Scotland. 1305.
 - 4 Edward's policy in Scotland—to knit England and Scotland together.
 - (a) General amnesty to all concerned in the resistance.
 - (b) Convocation summoned at Perth to elect council of *Scotch* nobles to govern Scotland, under Edward.
 - (c) Scotland divided into four judicial districts, Lothian, Galloway, Highlands, and land between Lothian and Highlands.
 - (d) Murder of Wallace. "*The darkest blot on Edward's Scotch rule.*"

B His Judicial Reforms. Organization of the institutions of his predecessors. Pp. 164—166.

- 1. *Bishops' Courts* limited to purely spiritual causes.
- 2. Creation of a new magistracy, Conservators (now *Justices*) of the Peace for the maintenance of public order. 1285.

3. Abolition of the office of *Justiciar*, leading to still further division between, and organization of, the three Common Law Courts, each having its distinct staff of Judges. (See Henry II., E 2, b 2.)
4. The appellate jurisdiction of the King in Council [Henry II. E 2, b 1] gives rise to the equitable jurisdiction of the Chancellor *for grievances for which the common law provides no adequate remedy.*

C His Legislative Reforms. Consolidation of principles which came *into practical working* under Henry II. Pp. 166, 167.

1. Assize of Winchester follows up the Assize of Arms (Henry II. D 4 and E 1 a), in putting at the King's disposal *the universal levy of the armed nation.* 1285.
2. Statute of Merchants to enable traders to get their debts by imprisonment of the debtor and distraint of his goods. 1284.
3. Statute of Mortmain, to prohibit alienation of lands to the Church (a milder landlord than the baronage) in such wise as to cease to render their due service to the King. 1279.
4. Statute of "Quia emptores" (to check the growth of *smaller land proprietors and yeomen*), but with the opposite effect. Under-tenants to hold their lands not of the barons' tenants, but of the barons themselves, and to pay their feudal duty to them as their superior lords. 1290. Tends rather to increase the subdivision of land, as both land and feudal duty admit of being transferred to new holders.

(Notice the reactionary tendency of the baronage in 3 and 4.)

D The King and the Nation. Pp. 196—200.

1. The Baronage.

a Political power in the hands of baronage acting through the continual council.

1 The towns devote their energies to commerce, not to state matters.

2 The barons in possession of the confidence of the people. (*Magna Charta* and *De Montfort.*)

b Struggle of the King against this political power.

1 The writ "*quo warranto*," to force barons to produce titles to their lands. "*Our swords are our title-deeds.*"

2 Strict enforcement of public order, and suppression of private war.

3 The King placed at the mercy of the baronage by the *expulsion of the Jews* (1290), and the demands of the Scotch war. Money required and no means of getting it except from the baronage.

- 4 The King's attempt to extort money and men for his expedition to Flanders fails. The barons refuse to follow him beyond seas. "By God, Sir King, I will neither go nor hang." 1297.
- 5 Confirmation of the Great Charter. ("The King may not raise taxes without the general consent of the realm,") and of the Charter of Forests. 1297. (See Henry III. B 1.)

2. The landowners. P. 195.

The baronage, notwithstanding their corporate political power, individually a declining class; increasing subdivision of land, and growth of the squirearchy and yeoman class. (See C 4.)

3. The English Towns. Fp. 187—195.

a The township originally the same in constitution with the country outside, from the time therefore of the Danish invasions, subject to the lordship of the King or of some great noble. (See Early England E 8 c.)

b The towns grown up round castles of nobles and abbeyes emancipate themselves slowly from serfdom.

c The towns, however, grown up in the royal domain only *externally* (e.g. in fees and tolls) subject to the lord, *internally* free (in speech, justice, right of meeting in arms. See Henry I. C 2, and John B 4 1).

c ("Let all share the same lot, if any misdo, let all bear it.") The townsmen held together by an organized system of mutual responsibility.

1 First by the *Frith-Gild* (*Peace-Gild*) for self-defence.

2 Then as commerce becomes more developed, by the *Merchant-Gild*. (Even as early as the Norman conquest, Frith-Gild superseded by Merchant-Gild.)

3 By the *Craft-Gilds*, or gilds of men without landed holdings, and engaged in trades held inferior. These gilds, first heard of in reign of Henry I., have to struggle for their life till the reign of John.

c Intense struggle in the towns for *municipal* power between the landed citizens and the unlanded inhabitants (the greater folk and the lesser folk, the "prudhommes" and the "commune") shown in the London riot led by William of the Long Beard, and the violent election of a Mayor of London by the craftsmen. 1261.

This struggle, first *commercial*, between the Merchant-Gild and the Craft-Gilds, then *municipal*, consti-

tutes *the great civic revolution of the Thirteenth and Fourteenth centuries.*

4. The Jews.

- a* The Jews introduced by William the Conqueror ; but only the King's chattels, not citizens of the country ; hence the conversion of Jews forbidden by William Rufus.
- b* Insolence of the Jews relying on royal protection answered by the hatred of the people.
- c* Edward I. sacrifices the Jews to the hatred of the people against usury and fanaticism. 1290.
- d* No Jews in England until the days of Cromwell.

E The Nation and the Parliament. Pp. 167—174.

1. History of the Parliament or Great Council of the realm to the end of this reign.

- a* Before the Conquest known as Witanagemote ; theoretically open to all freeholders, practically becomes a meeting of nobles, bishops, and King's thegns, as the freeholders are prevented by distance from attending.
- b* After the Conquest till Henry II. known as the Great Council of Baronage, and permanently represented by the King's Court ; theoretically the same, practically a royal court of greater barons, who, being originally the simple *tenants in capite*, had grown more powerful than, and distinct from the majority of that body : its direct power almost nominal : that of registering and giving formal "council and consent" to laws. Under Henry II. meets more regularly, passes the great reforms of his reign.
- c* By the Great Charter *power* of the Common Council of the realm *over taxation* recognized, and all tenants *in capite* (*i.e.* all who hold land directly of the Crown) once more invited to attend ; this invitation, however, is unsuccessful, owing to the increasing numbers of the lesser tenants.
- d* The knights of the shire, therefore, appear in John's reign as deputies of the lesser tenants in matters concerning taxation. Indications of the first beginning of *Parliamentary* representation : the "four discreet knights" from every county (1254), (theoretically the representatives only of the lesser baronage, practically of all rural freeholders) develop afterwards into the county franchise.
- e* Two *burgesses* summoned from each town by Simon de Montfort, 1265 ; "two burgesses summoned from every town, borough, and leading city in England," by Edward I. 1295. First beginning of borough franchise.

f Edward summons representatives of the clergy to attend (1295); but the clergy by refusing to vote except in their *own* assemblies, or *convocations*, forfeit their place in the National Council henceforward called Parliament.

2. Further history of the Parliament to the accession of the Tudors. Pp. 224—226 and 265—267.

a By the beginning of the reign of Edward III. the four orders — clergy, barons, knights, citizens — have become two, the barons (House of Lords) and the combined knights and citizens (House of Commons): the knights of the shires act as a link between the barons and burgesses, and so hold the whole Parliament together.

b The petitions of the Commons, when assented to by the King, become statutes, and have the force of law.

c The Commons, under pressure of war and famine, demand a voice in matters of general policy as well as of taxation. *The Good Parliament*. 1376.

d In the reign of Henry VI. Parliament tends to decline into a mere representation of baronage and great landowners.

1 The *borough* franchise limited by the action of *burgesses* obtaining charters of incorporation (for the protection of the civic property from strangers) and thus becoming close bodies.

2 The *county* franchise rapidly widening, owing to subdivision of estates, curtailed by the *large landowners* by the restriction of suffrage to freeholders holding land worth forty shillings (20*l.*) a year, and by management of elections.

e The barons and large landowners destroyed in their turn by the Wars of the Roses. *Parliament is for a very short time superseded by the King and Royal Council*.

F Character of the King. Pp. 175—178.

1. A typical Englishman—proud and narrow in sympathy—but just and duty-loving.

2. *Open to outer influence, especially to that of the French*, then growing into an organized nation: hence

a The adoption of an unreal chivalry.

b His introduction of the Tournament, and his “Vow of the Swan” to be avenged on Bruce for the murder of Comyn.

3. His sympathies confined to the noble class, to the exclusion of the labourer and craftsman (as in the massacre of Berwick).

4. *His legal spirit.* Hence his refusal to acknowledge unchartered—i.e. unwritten privileges—as in his behaviour to the champions of Scotch independence.

Edward II. 1307—1327.

A Internal History. Struggle between the King and the baronage. Pp. 200—204.

1. The King attempts to make a *ministry of men of inferior rank wholly dependent on the Crown*, under Piers Gaveston (of Guienne) as head. 1307.
 - a Gaveston dismissed and sent to Ireland as King's lieutenant; the King assents to the principle that "*redress of grievances should precede grants of aid.*" 1308.
 - b Return of Gaveston from Ireland; fresh opposition of the barons; ordinances of the *Lord Ordainers*, transferring all real power for a year from the King to the barons. 1310, 1311.
 - c Fruitless struggle of Edward, and surrender of Gaveston at Scarborough; execution of Gaveston. 1312.
2. The King makes a long attempt to evade the Ordinances (1312—1318); utter absence of rule in the country; famines; foreign defeat; King formally accepts the Ordinances. 1318.
3. Temporary reaction of *the nation* against the baronage.
 - a Rise of the Despensers with the policy of strengthening the Crown by supporting the power of the Three Estates against the separate action of the barons.
 - b Execution of Thomas of Lancaster (the King's cousin and head of the baronage). 1322.
 - c Statute that all matters be established in Parliament by the *King*, with the consent not only of the baronage, but also of *the universality of the realm*. 1322.
4. Final reaction of the nation against the public weakness and domestic vices of the King.
 - a The Queen Isabella (daughter of Philip the Fair) goes with Prince Edward to France to do homage for Aquitaine and Gascony. From thence she intrigues with the baronage, lands at Orwell in arms, along with Roger Mortimer the younger. 1326.
 - b Capture and execution of Despenser. 1326.
 - c Deposition and murder of the King. 1327. Roger Mortimer seizes the Government, to the exclusion of the other nobles.

B External History. The Scotch War of Independence. 1306.
Pp. 204—210.

1. The war continued by Robert Bruce ; co-regent with Comyn. 1299—1305 ; murders Comyn, 1306 ; is crowned King of Scotland. Edward I. swears the "Oath of the Swan," and punishes Bruce's adherents with terrible pitilessness. 1306—1307.
2. Bruce gradually gains ground in Scotland, till at last only *Stirling* withstands him. 1307—1313.
3. Edward II. marches to relieve *Stirling*. Battle of *Bannockburn* ; the Scotch formed in *rings* (the same formation as at the battles of *Senlac*, *Falkirk*, and *Waterloo*, and notice the two systems of warfare, the *feudal* and the *free*). **June, 24, 1315.**
4. Reception of Edward Balliol at the English Court as vassal-king of Scotland, leads to Scotch invasion of Northumberland. 1327.
5. Treaty of Northampton. *Independence of Scotland recognized.* 1328.
6. Continuation of struggle after the recognition of independence.
 - a Edward Balliol lands in Scotland on the death of Robert Bruce, and is crowned King at *Scone*. 1332.
 - b Balliol expelled by the Scotch ; English siege of *Berwick*, battle of *Halidon Hill*, won by the *English bowmen* ; capture of *Berwick*, the only town that remains to justify the English claim of overlordship over Scotland. 1337.
 - c Edward Balliol supported as vassal-king of Scotland. 1333—1337.
 - d Scotland saved from further aggressions by Edward III. by outbreak of French war. 1337.

Henceforward, the Scotch war of independence becomes a mere quarrel between two angry neighbours.

Edward III. 1327—1377.

A Characteristics of Reign. Pp. 211—217.

1. Outburst of a new and keener sense of national unity : *the struggle for existence is over.*
 - a Constitutional freedom ; Parliament has control of taxation (Ed. I. D 1 b, 5), right of deposition (Ed. II. A 4 c), a voice in public policy (Ed. I. E 2 c).
 - b General vigour of English life.
 - 1 Growing disuse of the French tongue, even among the nobler classes.

- 2 The extension of the carrying trade, especially of wool to Flanders.
- 3 The settlement of Flemish weavers and growth of the woollen manufactures in the *East* (*Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex*) and the *West* near *Bristol*.
- 4 Rise of the tenant farmer and development of agriculture.
- c Moral and intellectual freedom. The independence of Wyclif, and the socialism of the Lollards.

"This new gladness of a great people utters itself in the verse of Geoffrey Chaucer."

Chaucer.

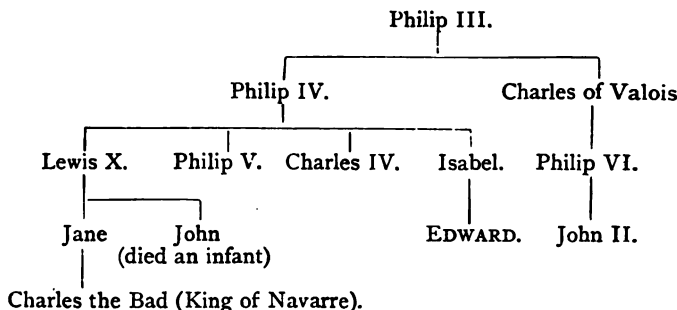
- 1 A courtier, an adherent—possibly a brother-in-law—of John of Gaunt.
- 2 Reality and gaiety of his poems. It is an age of talk and of action, not of books.
- 3 His poems thoroughly English. Types of every class of English society.
- 4 His poem serious and pure (in contrast to his Italian models).
2. Misery and stagnation produced by the hundred years' war.
The age which began with the good Parliament ended with the despotism of the Tudors.

B Early Years of Edward III. 1327—1336.

1. Unsuccessful attempt by Henry Earl of Lancaster to overthrow Roger Mortimer's government after Treaty of Northampton. **1328, 1329.**
2. Edward arrests Mortimer with his own hands at Nottingham. Execution of Mortimer. **Nov. 1330.**
3. Peace with France in order to act against Scotland. (See Edward II. **B 6.**)

C The Hundred Years' War with France. Pp. 217—224.

1. French anxiety to win Guienne leads to constant interferences in Scotch war; pretexts for interference found in the rivalry between the French mariners and those of the Cinque Ports.
3. Edward III. declares war against France (**1336**), relying—
 - a On the riches of England.
Edward becomes paymaster of foreign powers: (*e.g.* the German princes and the Emperor Lewis.)
 - b On the alliance between Flanders, the great weaving, and England, the great wool-producing country, supported by Jacques Van Arteveld; federative treaty of England and the Flemish towns against France. **1339.**
 - c English victory over the French fleet at Sluys, **1340**, but failure to capture Tournay. Truce with France. Death of Van Arteveld in a trade riot at Ghent. **1345.**

d His own claim to the French crown :

This claim, hardly tenable in law, and possibly put forward to win the Flemish alliance, is regarded by both sides as a mere formality.

4. Expiration of truce with France and collapse of all hopes of foreign aid. An *English* army lands at La Hogue (1346), marches across the N. of France to join the Flemish at Gravelines; being pursued by the French, halts to give battle at Cressy, near Abbeville. **August 26, 1346.**

a The English bowmen drawn up behind a ditch in "the form of a harrow," with bombards between the teeth, which "with fire threw little balls to frighten the horses." The battle decided by the English yeomen with their bows, "it seemed as if it snowed."

b Results of the battle :—

- 1 To Europe—*fall of chivalry and feudalism* (as in England, the battles of Stirling and Bannockburn), the churl had struck down the noble.
- 2 To England—followed by the victory over the Scotch at Neville's Cross, **October, 17, 1346**—the opening of a career of military glory. For the inevitably bad effects see **A 2.**

4. Edward attacks Calais,

a as *the great pirate haven*, to secure freedom of trade in the Channel;

b to get the command of the keys of the Channel (Dover and Calais), takes it after a year's siege. **1347,**

c To have a means of communication with his one ally, Flanders.

5. Truce with France (1347—1355), during which a victory over the Spanish pirates in the Channel makes Edward "King of the Sea," **1350**, and the *Imperial Crown is offered to him.*

6. Campaign of the Black Prince up the Garonne among "a good simple people, who did not know what war was till the Prince came." 1355.

7. A similar campaign for plunder up the Loire stopped by the French King John. The Black Prince retreats, offers terms, is obliged to fight at **Poitiers, Sept. 19, 1356.**

a The battle decided by an ambush of archers along the hedgerows of a narrow lane, and a cavalry charge on the French flank.

b Results of the battle :—

1 Two years' truce with France. 1356.

2 Companies of bandits lay waste France in the absence of her King. "The streets are deserted, the roads overgrown with weeds, the whole is a vast solitude."

3 Revolt of the peasants, butchering their lords and burning their castles. "Jacques Bonhomme."

8. Peace of Bretigny. **May, 1360.**

a Surrender of English claim on *Normandy and Crown of France.*

b English King to be *independent sovereign of Aquitaine and Ponthieu*, and to retain Calais.

9. Truce between England and France (1360—1369), during which the Black Prince undertakes his Spanish campaign and restores Peter the Cruel to Castile, to secure the aid of Spain in the retention of Aquitaine, which is discontented at its absolute transference to English rule.

10. The renewal of the war and loss of Aquitaine.

a The King of France, Charles V. summons the Black Prince to judgment as one of his vassals for undue taxation of the Gascons, especially for the hearth-tax. Anger of the Prince, and cruel sack of Limoges. 1369. Illness of the Prince.

b Defeat of the English fleet by the Spaniards, under Henry of Trastamara, after the expulsion of Pedro off Rochelle. The Spaniards masters of the Channel and communication between England and Flanders cut off. 1372.

c Victories of Du Guesclin for the French in Guienne. Fruitless campaign of John of Gaunt, who cannot bring the French to an engagement. English army destroyed by winter in the Auvergne mountains. 1373.

d Consequent revolt of Aquitaine ; only *Bordeaux* and *Bayonne* left to the English. 1374.

C The Beginnings of Religious Revolution. Pp. 228—237 and 143—147.

1. The position of the clergy in the nation.

- a* The *higher prelates*, for long political rather than spiritual, having furnished a long succession of *great statesmen*.—Lanfranc, Henry of Winchester, Roger of Salisbury, Theobald, Becket, Langton.
- b* The religious houses of the *regular clergy* always in danger of degenerating into *societies of landowners*, rich, but bearing as few as possible of the national burdens.
- c* The *foreign priests*, "unlearned and unworthy caitiffs, worse than Jews or Saracens; promoted by the sinful brokers of the City of Rome." Boys of twelve years old sometimes appointed.
- d* The *secular or parish priests*, some ignorant and non-resident, others "threadbare, learned, and devout."

2. Church Reform from within; attempt to bring the Church nearer to the nation.

- a* The Friars land in England. **1221.** The black Friars of S. Dominic of Spain ("zeal must be met by zeal"), and the grey (*i.e.* brown) Friars of S. Francis of Assisi, who claims Poverty as his bride and all created things as his brothers and sisters ("we thank Thee, O Lord, for our sister the death of the body").
- b* These begging Friars devote themselves to the towns, and fight fever, plague, and leprosy in the lazarett-houses and unhealthy suburbs.
- c* The Friars, at first the enemies of learning, are drawn by the necessities of their work to study physical science, by the necessities of their preaching to study theology. They found theology and philosophy (scholasticism) at Oxford. (Bacon, Duns Scotus, Ockham.) **1270.**
- d* The political influence of scholasticism in framing a theory of the constitution seen notably in the poems at the period of the Barons' War. (See Henry III. **C 3.** *d*).
- e* Great influx, sometimes of mere children, into the Friars' orders; decay of enthusiasm till at last they are known only as impudent beggars. **1366.**

3. Church Reform from without.

- a* Caused by the selfishness and greed of the regular clergy, and hastened by—
 - i* The Papal exactions dating from the reign of Henry III. calling forth—
 - (*a*) The first statute of "Præmunire" to prohibit Papal bulls in England. **1353.**

- (δ) The statute of "Provisors" to deny papal claim to dispose of livings. 1351. These statutes only partially successful, ending in compromise.
- 2 The transfer of the papacy to Avignon, and the English dislike of a French Pope (shewn in the English alliance with Lewis of Bavaria while excommunicated, and the disregard of the Papal interdict by the English priests). 1339.
- δ The antagonism to the selfish clergy and anti-national Papacy headed and represented by Wyclif.
- c Wyclif as a reformer.
 - 1 Writes his book, "De Dominio Divino," by which he sweeps away the whole idea of a mediating priesthood. *Dominion* only belongs to God, *power* delegated by Him to all who hold it. 1368. Condemned by Pope Gregory XI. 1378.
 - 2 Supports John of Gaunt in his policy of Church spoliation, believing that the loss of worldly goods will lead to a gain of spiritual power. Summoned before the Bishop of London. 1376, 1377.
 - 3 Denies the doctrine of Transubstantiation, *i.e.* of the miracle wrought in the mass. 1381. *He thus becomes the first Protestant, and begins the Reformation.*
 - 4 Hopes of Church reform from the baronage scattered by the outbreak of the Peasants' Revolt, for which his teaching is held responsible. 1381.
 - 5 Supported by the University of Oxford in spite of King and Pope, he *appeals to the English nation*,
 - (a) by the preaching of the "Simple Priests";
 - (b) by his *English* Tracts;
 - (c) by his *English* Bible.
 - 6 Increase in his followers, *Lollards* (literally idle babblers) especially in Oxford, *where, however, they are crushed by Archbishop Courtenay.* 1383. *Religious freedom and intellectual life extinct in Oxford till the days of Colet and Erasmus.* 1499.
 - 7 Wyclif summoned to appear before the Papal Court; dies at his parish of Lutterworth. Dec. 31, 1384.
 - 8 After the death of Wyclif, and the Oxford Persecution, Lollardry ceases to be an organized movement, and is mixed up with the general spirit of social and religious discontent.

- 9 The *social and political side* of Lollardry asserts itself most clearly in the reign of Richard II., and is crushed under Henry IV. and V. by the statute de Hæretico Comburendo, and the execution of Sir John Oldcastle. 1418.
- 10 The *religious side* lives on, showing itself in a vague feeling of discontent (not without outrages against the received religion) and perusal of Wyclif's tracts and Bible, till the days of the Protestant Martyrs. 1535.

D The Beginnings of Social Revolution. 1377—1381. Pp. 237—247.

1. The English Manor.

- a The "demesne," or home-farm (about one-quarter of the whole), in the hands of the lord, farmed by his bailiff.
- b Small estates possessed by the freeholders, free-tenants or "villeins," originally "ceorls," become dependent on lords in the time of the Danish invasions (early England E 8. c) and bound to render definite services, subsequently entered on the roll of the manor; hence the villeins get the name of "copyholders."
- c The huts of the "landless men," "cottarii," "serfs," bound to work all the year on the home-farm, but with a legal right to their homesteads.
- d The waste over which all tenants had right of pasture.

2. The introduction of leasing or "farming," in the twelfth century. The owner lets the "demesne" out to a tenant instead of cultivating it through the bailiff. Hence

- a the tie of feudal organization broken;
- b the wealthier tenantry rise in importance by becoming farmers.

3. The emancipation of the "cottarii" and rise of the free labourer.

- a The influence of the Church in freeing serfs.
- b Fugitive serfs find refuge in the chartered towns, and become free after a residence of a year and a day.
- c Commutation of services both of the "villeins" and the "cottarii" for money payment, hastened by the necessities of the landowners, and the increase of the number of tenants through the sub-division of holdings produced by the law of "gavelkind;" thus in the reign of Edward III., lords and farmers have to depend on the hired free labourer.
- d Labour no longer bound to the soil.

4. The supply of free labourers made insufficient by the Black Death. 1348.

a More than half the population swept away. *In Bristol the living could scarcely bury the dead.*

b Lawless self-indulgence of the "landless men or free labourers," now masters of the labour market, who soon become "sturdy beggars."

5. The Statute of Labourers, to check the lawlessness of the "sturdy beggars wandering in search of work" (1351); labourers to accept the wages of two years before the plague (though not enough to live on, owing to the rise in the price of corn), and once more tied to the soil; fugitives to be branded.

Attempts made to reduce villeins who have redeemed themselves and the lower craftsmen in towns to their old state.

6. Strikes and combination of craftsmen, especially in Kent and the eastern counties; John Ball the preacher of the movement—the defiance of socialism to the tyranny of property.

7. Gloom and discontent of the time reflected in Langland's *Piers the Ploughman*. 1382—1380.

8. (Accession of Richard II.) The labourers still masters of the market; with high wages at harvest time, but in the intervals with great scarcity of food and work. A severer poll-tax imposed for the French war; the labourers and craftsmen inflamed by a tax to which the *poorest man contributes as much as the richest*. 1380.

a The revolt begins in *Essex, Kent*, under Jack Straw, and spreads over *Hertfordshire, Norfolk, Suffolk, Cambridge*, and even to *Lancashire and Yorkshire* in one direction—*Sussex, Surrey*, and westward to *Devon* in another.

b Entrance of the Kentish peasants, under Wat Tyler, into London; burning of the Savoy and Temple, and execution of Archbishop Sudbury.

c Tyler slain in a scuffle. Brave conduct of the young Prince. He frees the peasants of *Essex* and of *Kent*. Loyal confidence of the peasants in the King.

d Suppression of the remains of the revolt, chiefly by the energy of Spenser, Bishop of Norwich, and by the slaughter or execution of 7,000 peasants.

e The *Parliament of landowners* refuse to ratify the King's letters of freedom: "*Our consent we have never given and never will give, were we all to die in one day.*"

9. Fears of another outbreak; the work of emancipation continues in spite of

- a* fresh legislation, forbidding villeins to send their sons to school, and excluding them from the colleges being founded at the Universities, that they may not enter the Church.
- b* The substitution of sheep farming for tillage, which perpetuates a populace of "sturdy beggars."
- 10. Spread of Lollardry, though dead in Oxford, through the country. Blending of religious and social discontent. Every third man in the streets is a Lollard.
- E** The political progress of the Commons, *i.e.* of the *property-holding* classes in the nation ;
 - a* In matters of taxation, subsidies set upon wool without consent of Parliament made illegal, and purveyance restricted by enforcement of immediate payment. 1362.
 - b* The Commons obtain that their petitions when assented to by the King, become statutes and have the force of laws, but when consulted by the King on the subject of the war, they refer him back to the lords of the Council. 1354.
 - c* The Commons obtain additional weight from the struggle between the Church and the Baronage, headed by John of Gaunt ; seen most in the Good Parliament, 1376, in which
 - 1 The Commons complain of the mismanagement of the French war and of excessive taxation, and being supported by the Black Prince, force John of Gaunt to retire from the Council.
 - 2 The Commons further complain generally of the abuses of the King's government, and demand—
 - (*a*) the annual assembly of Parliament ;
 - (*b*) freedom of election for knights of the shire ;
 - (*c*) freedom from arbitrary taxation (the first national opposition to royal misrule) ;
 - (*d*) freedom of the Church from the Pope, by whom the work of the Good Parliament is undone.
- F** Misrule of last years of Edward III. The King mainly under the influence of Alice Perrers. Death of Edward III., *the merchant King*; *the King of all property-holding Englishmen.* 1377.

Richard II. 1377—1399. Pp. 254—257.

- A** The Condition of the Nation : social and religious discontent. (See Edward III., C and D.)

B The King's Minority. 1377—1388.

- a* The work of the Good Parliament continued. The Commons assign two members to regulate expenditure. 1377.
- b* Fresh defeats in the French war under John of Gaunt, both by land and sea. 1378.
- c* The taxes imposed in pursuance of John of Gaunt's policy, to defray the expenses of the war, kindle the peasant revolt. 1381. (See Edward III., D).
- d* French victory at Rosbecque, death of Philip van Arteveld, leader of the English party among the Flemish. 1382. France mistress of the seas; French landing in Scotland, capture of Ghent, and fear of French invasion of England. 1385. John of Gaunt forced to leave the country; goes to Spain to assert his claim to the Spanish throne, as son-in-law of Peter the Cruel. 1386.
- e* Michel de la Pole, trying to make the Crown independent of Parliament, overthrown by the King's uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, and the government put in the hands of a continual council by the Merciless (Wonderful) Parliament. 1388.

C The King's Reign. 1387—1397.

- a* His reign as a wise and constitutional King. 1388—1397.
 - 1 The King being of age frees himself from the restraint of Gloucester and the Continual Council. 1389.
 - 2 Pursues a peace policy and consents to govern by advice of Parliament. Third statute of Provisors. 1390. Second of Præmunire. 1393.
 - 3 Protects the Lollard Reformers, owing to the influence of his first wife, Anne of *Bohemia*.
 - 4 Undertakes a campaign to *Ireland*, reforms the English misgovernment, and receives the submission of the natives. 1394.
 - 5 The *peace policy* strengthened by the second marriage of the King to Isabella, daughter of the French king, Charles V., and a truce of *twenty-five years*. 1396.
- b* His reign as a revengeful and absolute King. 1397—1399.
 - 1 Supported by John of Gaunt (returned from Spain) and his son Henry (afterwards Bolingbroke), he takes vengeance on his uncle Gloucester. Gloucester found dead in his prison at Calais, the pardons of 1388 recalled, seventeen counties outlawed at once for supporting the King's enemies. 1397.
 - 2 He attacks the house of Lancaster to secure for himself absolute government.

Banishes Henry of Bolingbroke (Hereford) and the Duke of Norfolk. 1398.

Confiscates the Duke of Lancaster's estates. 1399.

- 3 He attacks Parliament by obtaining from packed assemblies :

- (a) the grant of a tax upon wool for life, 1397 ;
- (b) the transference of the functions of Parliament to a *Commission of Twelve*; four days, Jan. 28—Jan. 31, 1398, overthrew the constitution of the country.

D The Lancastrian Revolution.

1. Henry of Hereford, or Bolingbroke, lands at Ravenspur, in Yorkshire, nominally to recover his lands.
2. Richard returns from Ireland to meet him, but finds Bolingbroke master of the realm. Submits to Bolingbroke at Flint, and finally *resigns*, Sept. 29, 1399, but is also deposed. Dies Feb. 14, 1400.
3. Parliament passes over Edmund Mortimer, the great-grandson of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, and confers the Crown on Bolingbroke, the son of John of Gaunt, Clarence's younger brother. *The Lancastrian title is, therefore, purely Parliamentary*, though Henry also claims the Crown—
 - a by descent from Henry III. ;
 - b by conquest.

Henry IV. 1399—1413. Pp. 258, 259.

A Supremacy of the Parliament: i.e. of the property-holding classes. (See Richard II., D 3.)

1. The renewal of the French war, to win the support of the nobles.
 - a Owing to the lunacy of Charles VI., France divided between the Duke of Burgundy and Flanders (head of the peace party), and the Duke of Orleans (head of the war party).
 - b As yet no open warfare, but desultory fighting in the Channel. 1403—1404.
 - c The French encourage Scotch invasion of England, beaten back at Homildon Hill 1402, recognize Owen Glendower as Prince of Wales 1404, and assist him 1407.
 - d Murder of Duke Lewis of Orleans ; struggle between the Burgundians and Orleanists (now called Armagnacs) 1407 ; the Duke of Burgundy, by the help of the English, captures Paris. 1411.
2. The Persecution of the Lollards, to win the support of the Church. Statute "de Hæretico Comburendo"—"the first legal enactment of religious bloodshed." 1401.

B Revolts against Henry, kept up by the resentment of the Lollards, the Welsh desire for independence and attachment to Richard II., and supported by the hostility of France.

1. Welsh revolt, under Owen Glendower, encouraged and finally supported by France. **1400—1415**. Glendower, however, permanently crippled by a defeat in **1409**.
2. Revolt of Henry Percy to put Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, on the throne; crushed by battle of Shrewsbury. **1403**.
3. Revolt of Earl of Northumberland and Archbishop Scrope. Execution of Scrope, and flight of Northumberland to Scotland. **1405**.
4. *The Lollard conspiracy*.

a Sir John Oldcastle (Lord Cobham) opens his house to the Lollards, defying the law, and advocates the seizure of the temporalities of the Church.

b On the accession of Henry V. he is condemned as a heretic; escapes from the Tower; great Lollard rising in London, crushed by the activity of the young King; thirty-nine Lollard leaders executed; the political strength of Lollardry broken. **1414**.

c Capture and burning of Cobham, the former friend of Henry V., the Havelock of his time. **1410**
(See Edward III., C.)

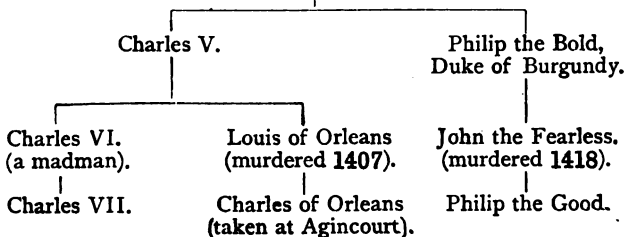
C Gradual decline of the King's health—leprosy and epileptic fits. Power passes into the hands of a Continual Council under the presidency of Prince Henry **1406—1411**; the Council dissolved by the King **1411**; death of the King, **March 1413**.

Henry V. 1413—1422. Pp. 260—264.

A Condition of France.

The King, Charles VI., a madman; struggle for power between the Burgundians (the peace party) and the Armagnacs, Orleanists (the war party).

John II. (captured at Poitiers).



B *Henry V. resumes the war mainly to gratify the wounded pride of the English.*

1. The Conquest of Normandy.

a Henry captures Harfleur ; marches through the north of France.

b Finds a large French army at Agincourt, on the other side of the Somme, drawn up deep, waiting for his attack. The English archers goad the French into attack, and the unwieldy masses soon get into confusion : the battle decided by a charge of the English men-at-arms. Capture of the Duke of Orleans. **October 25, 1415.**

c Henry returns to England ; struggle for mastery of Channel ; Henry lands again in Normandy, takes Caen, besieges Rouen for six months, takes it in spite of brave resistance of Alan Blanchard, whom he puts to death. **1417, 1418.**

2. The Conquest of France. 1419—1422.

a Assassination of the Duke of Burgundy makes the Burgundians Henry's friends. **1419.**

b Treaty of Troyes. **May 1420.** Henry, Regent of France during Charles's life, and to succeed him as King ; marries Charles's daughter, Catherine.

c Henry continues the conquest of France ; reduces Dreux and Meaux ; dies regretting that he has not lived to achieve the conquest of Jerusalem. **1422.** (Such a crusade might have saved Constantinople from the Ottoman Turks).

Henry VI. 1422—1470.

A Condition of England. Pp. 265—268.

1. Politically.

a Parliament becomes a mere representation of the baronage and great landowners.

i The *borough* franchise limited by the action of *burgesses* obtaining charters of incorporation (for the protection of the civic property from strangers) and thus becoming close bodies.

2 The *county* franchise rapidly widening owing to subdivision of estates, curtailed by the *large landowners* by the restriction of the suffrage to freeholders holding land worth 40 shillings (20*l.*) a year, and by management of elections.

b The foreign policy of the baronage dictated by love of gold. "If God had been a captain nowadays, he would have turned marauder."

2. Socially.

- a* The Church a mere section of the landed aristocracy.
- b* The lawlessness of the baronage: as at the Club Parliament. **1426.**
- c* Immorality even of cultivated men, as Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester (founder of the University Library at Oxford), and the Earl of Worcester, "the Butcher" (Caxton's patron).
- d* Decay of English literature. Nothing but mystery plays and riming chronicles.
- e* Prevalent belief in astrology; penance and imprisonment for life of (Eleanor Cobham) the Duchess of Gloucester, burning of Joan of Arc, and later, penance of Jane Shore.

B Joan of Arc. Pp. 268—273.

1. The Duke of Bedford (brother of Henry V.) by making an alliance with the Duke of Brittany, and marrying the sister of the Duke of Burgundy, completes the conquest of northern France.
 - a* English victory at Verneuil. **1424.** A third of the French knighthood left on the field.
 - b* The Duke of Burgundy deserts the English through jealousy of the Duke of Gloucester's marriage with the divorced Duchess of Brabant. **1424.**
 - c* Bedford on the defensive, partly owing to the desertion of Burgundy, partly to the struggle in England between Gloucester (returned from Brabant) and Cardinal Beaufort. (See table, p. 69).
 - d* Bedford pushes on to the conquest of the south. **1427.**
 - e* Siege of Orleans by 3,000 English. **1428, 1429.** The battle of the Herrings. **Feb. 1429.**
2. The Maid.
 - a* Her message to the Dauphin: "You shall be anointed and crowned in the town of Rheims, and you shall be lieutenant of the heavenly King, who is the King of France;" and to Bedford: "Work no more distraction in France, but come with me and rescue the Holy Sepulchre from the Turk."
 - b* The Maid enters Orleans, and leads the attack on the English forts. **May 7, 1429.**
 - c* Coronation of the Dauphin (Charles VII.) as King of France at Rheims. **July 18, 1429.**
 - d* The Maid continues in the war against her own will; is captured at Compiègne by the Burgundians (**May 26, 1430**), and sold to the English.
 - e* Trial of the Maid. "God has ever been my Lord; the Devil has never had power over me." Resumes her male dress to protect her from insult—and

for this act is doomed to death. Burned at Rouen. "We are lost, we have burned a saint." **June 14, 1431.**

C Loss of France. 1431—1451. Pp. 273—275.

- a* Attempt to secure Normandy, at least, for England, made by Bedford, in France, and Cardinal Beaufort, at home, partly by loans of money, partly by preventing reconciliation between Burgundy and France. **1432—1434.**
- b* Death of Bedford; Duke of Burgundy leaves English alliance. **1434.** Paris surrenders to French. **1436.**
- c* Successful struggles of the Duke of York, Regent of France. **1436—1438.** Recalled through Lancastrian jealousy. **1438.** Returns to France. **1440.** Assisted in his struggle by Lord Talbot. Superseded by Edmund Beaufort. **1444.**
- d* Truce with France. **1444.** Marriage of Henry VI. to Margaret of Anjou urged on by the Beauforts, partly to secure peace with France, partly to hinder the possibility of York's succession to the throne, and promised surrender of Anjou and Maine. **1445.** Murder of the Duke of Gloucester, the great opponent of peace. **1447.**
- e* French conquest of Normandy imputed to the incapacity of Edward Beaufort (Duke of Somerset). **1449.**
- f* French conquest of Guienne. Capture of Bayonne. *Final expulsion of the English from all France, excepting Calais, and end of the Hundred Years' War, which built up France into a great nation.* **1451.**

D Discontent in England at the Issue of the War. Pp. 275, 276.

1. William de la Pole, the Duke of Suffolk, impeached for the cession of Anjou, and murdered. **1450.**
2. Insurrection in Kent, *the great manufacturing district of the day*, and hostile to France, owing to the piracy in the Channel, under John Cade—"a young man of goodly stature and pregnant wit"—spreading to Sussex and Surrey; the popular feeling towards the Duke of York shown by Cade's assumed name—Mortimer.
 - a* The "Complaint of the Commons of Kent" touches no longer on social or religious, but on *political* questions. They demand a change of ministry, economy, freedom of election.
 - b* The Complaint refused by the Council. Cade occupies London, July 1. Is beaten out by the Londoners, July 5.
 - c* The Complaint received by the Council. Pardons granted to all concerned in the revolt. Cade pursued and slain. **1450.**

The Wars of the Roses.**1. The rival Claims.****THE LANCASTER CLAIM.**

EDWARD III.

Blanche = John of Gaunt = Catherine Swynford (legitimatised by Richard II. but debarred from succession to Crown by a provision of Henry IV.).

HENRY IV.

John Beaufort

Henry (Cardinal).

HENRY V. = Catherine of France = Owen Tudor

John

Edmund,
Earl of Somerset
(killed at S. Alban's, 1455).

Joan = James I. of Scotland.

HENRY VI.

Edmund Tudor = Margaret.

Henry,
Duke of Somerset
(beheaded at
Hexham, 1464).Edmund,
Duke of Somerset
(beheaded after
Tewkesbury, 1471).

Margaret

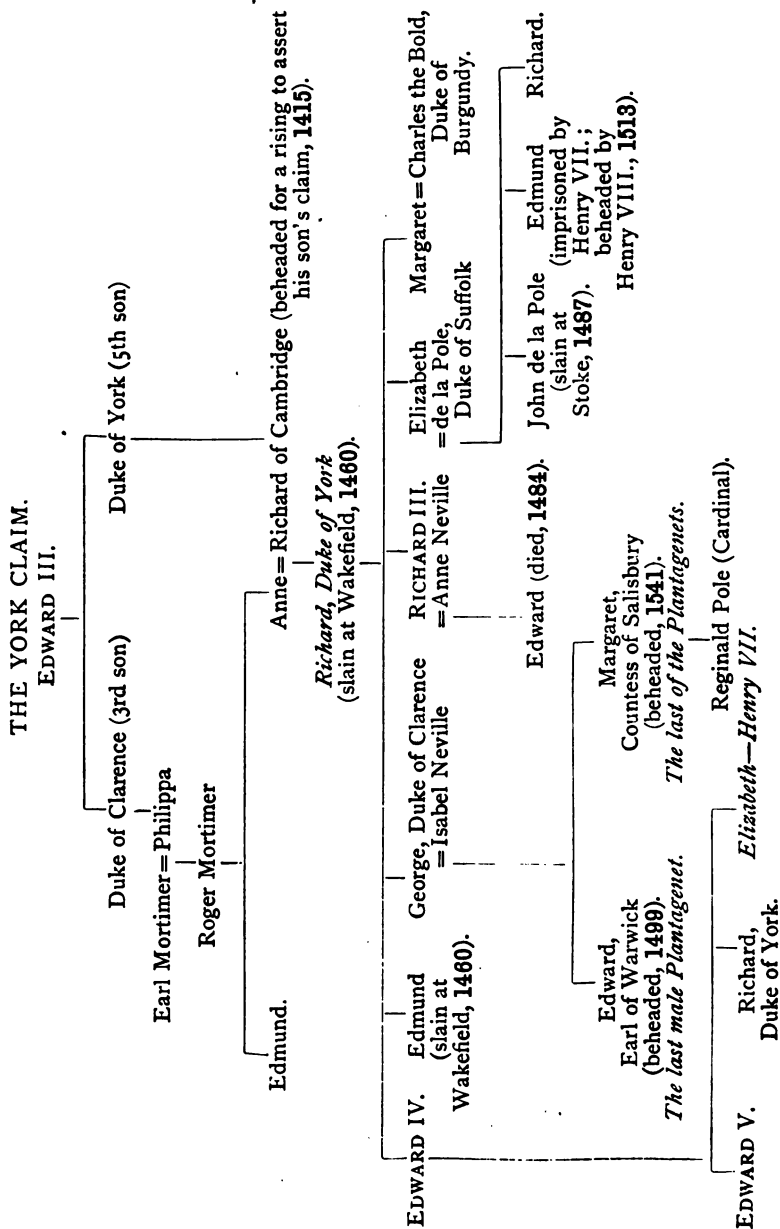
Edward = Anne Neville
at Tewkesbury, 1471).

HENRY VII.

Stafford

(beheaded, 1483).

(slain)



3. The Civil War. 1454—1485. Pp. 276—279.

- a* Contest between the Houses of Parliament (in favour of York) and the King (in favour of Beaufort Somerset).
- b* Birth of Edward Prince of Wales, consequent lull in the dispute between York and the Beauforts as to the succession, and the appearance of Queen Margaret, mother of the future King, as leader of the royal party. 1453.
- c* Madness of Henry VI. Richard, Duke of York, Protector. 1454.
- d* Recovery of Henry. Return of Edmund, Duke of Somerset, to power. York taking arms defeats and kills Somerset and captures the King at S. Albans, **May 23, 1455.**
- e* Second illness of the King and Protectorship of York. 1456.
- f* Apparent reconciliation of the rival parties, 1456—1458, followed by the flight of York to Ireland, his return, and defeat and capture of the King at Northampton. 1460. York claims the crown; by a compromise he is to succeed Henry (Prince Edward being put aside).
- g* *The industrial and commercial classes (London and the great merchant towns) in favour of York, owing to the disgraceful issue of the war; the persecution of the Lollards, and the general misgovernment of the King.* The House of Lancaster supported by Wales, the N. and S.W. of England. Its strongest claims, its long possession of the throne, and the legal parliamentary sanction of its title.
- h* Rising of the North and West for the King. Battle of Wakefield, **Dec. 31,** defeat and execution of York. 1460.
- i* The Lancastrians advance on London. Second battle of S. Albans and defeat of the Yorkist Earl Warwick by Queen Margaret. **Feb. 17, 1461.**
- j* Want of energy and discipline among the Lancastrians and the firmness of London enable Edward, son of Richard of York, to enter London, where he is declared King as Edward IV. **March 3, 1461.**
- k* Battle of Towton field, near Tadcaster; utter defeat of the Lancastrians. No such battle seen in England since the battle of Senlac, 120,000 men engaged, no quarter given. **Palm Sunday, March 29, 1461.**
- l* Power of Warwick, Governor of Calais, Lieutenant of Ireland, Warden of the Western Marches, Head of the Nevilles, *the king-maker, the last of the barons:* not however a soldier, but a crafty diplomatist.

- m* Defeat of the Lancastrians at Hedgley Moor and at Hexham by Montague, Earl of Northumberland, Warwick's brother.
- n* Commencement of struggle between Edward and Warwick.
 - 1 Anxiety of Warwick to form a French alliance with Lewis XI., Edward, however, secretly marries the widow of a Lancastrian, Elizabeth Grey, daughter of Sir Richard Woodeville.
 - 2 Edward weds his sister Margaret to Charles the Bold of Burgundy (the enemy of Warwick and of Lewis XI. of France). Warwick escapes to France, meets Queen Margaret, marries his daughter Anne to Prince Edward. **1467.**
 - 3 Warwick returns to England, rises in arms, joins the Lancastrian party, finds support in Kent, drives Edward from England. **Oct. 1470.**
 - 4 Edward lands in Yorkshire, nominally to recover his hereditary duchy. **March 14, 1471.** Defeats Warwick in the battle of Barnet, "a medley of carnage and treachery." **Easter Monday, April 14.**
- o* Queen Margaret and Prince Edward slain at Tewkesbury, **May 4**; Henry VI. found dead in the Tower. **1471.**

Edward IV. 1461—1483.

A Character of the Wars of the Roses. P. 282.

- 1. "The mischief falls on those who make war." Bloodshed and ruin confined to the feudal lords and their retainers.
- 2. The towns, though on the whole Yorkist, stand aloof from the struggle, and give themselves to commerce.
- 3. The course of justice undisturbed; gradual development of the jury system by separation of jurors and witnesses. (See Henry II. E 1. *b*.)

B Result of the Wars of the Roses; the establishment of the New Monarchy. Pp. 283—286.

- 1. Destruction of the previous political system.
 - a* The older baronage, as yet the champions of freedom, weakened by the war.
 - b* The Church, chiefly eager for the preservation of its property, without sympathy for religious reform, or for intellectual progress.
 - c* The Commons growing in wealth, but powerless, owing to the narrowing of the franchise (see Henry VI. A 1. *a*.) and the "management" of elections.

2. The Crown the only remaining political power.
 - a* The Church finds in it protection from heresy.
 - b* The landowners and moneyed classes from *social revolt*, which, dating from the Statute of Labourers (1351), is increased by the breaking up of the Feudal Households, and the growing tendency to turn arable into pasture land remaining *the greatest danger of England for the next hundred years*.
3. Consequent growth of the Royal power.
 - a* Extension of the legislative and judicial powers of the Royal Council in spite of established freedom from arbitrary legislation, and established responsibility of state officers to Parliament (*e.g.*, the Good Parliament, 1376).
 - b* Exaction of benevolences and forced loans in spite of established freedom from arbitrary taxation.
 - c* Organisation of spy-system, supported by frequent bills of attainder and the use of torture in spite of established freedom from arbitrary imprisonment.

C Edward IV. The founder of the new monarchy. Pp. 286, 287.

1. Total discontinuance of Parliamentary life in consequence of the confiscations and the increased wealth of the Royal Treasury. After the Battle of Towton (*e.g.*) the property of twelve nobles and one hundred knights appropriated by Edward. The first reign since that of John in which no measure is passed for the good of the people.
2. Further increase of the wealth and therefore of the independence of the King,
 - a* by the subsidies granted by Parliament to support his claim to the French crown;
 - b* by a "benevolence" demanded from the merchants 1473 (the beginning of forced loans).
3. In spite of the affectation of indolence and gaiety, Edward's real aim that of Ferdinand of Arragon and Lewis XI. of France—"the *tres magi* of Kings of those ages"—the establishment of absolute power.

D State of English Literature. 1400—1476. Pp. 287—293.

1. Dying out of *the purely intellectual class*.
 - a* Ignorance of the clergy, the representatives of the learning of the middle ages.
 - b* Decline of Oxford and decrease of students in spite of erection of new colleges. "Oxford Latin" a by-word.
2. Increased influence of literature over the *people* at large.
 - a* Growth of popular literature (compendiums, rimed chronicles, mysteries, fly-sheets); increased number of readers, more accurate writing. See the Paston

Letters, the first instance in English history of a family correspondence.

- b* Printing originated by Gutenberg, Fust, and Schœffer, brought into England by Caxton. 1476.

- 1 Caxton as a printer.

Though a practical man of business, anxious to get a living from his trade, he does not neglect the higher English literature ; prints Chaucer, Lydgate, Gower, the Chronicle of Brut, the History of the San Graal.

- 2 Caxton as a translator of Boethius, Vergil, Cicero.

- Avoids French affectation and English pedantry, and in spite of conflicting dialects, lays a foundation for literary English.

3. Literature patronised by kings and nobles.

- a* By kings and royal houses, *e.g.*, Henry VI., Edward IV., Richard III., and Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, the founder of the University Library (now called the Bodleian) at Oxford from the spoils of the Louvre.

- b* By nobles, *e.g.*, Sir John Fastolf, Earl Rivers (brother of the Queen), and John Tiptoft, Earl of Worcester (the Butcher).

Edward V. 1489.

Supposed to have been murdered along with his brother Richard, Duke of York, by order of his uncle, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, who succeeds him after an interregnum of four days. June 22—26.

Richard III. 1483—1485.

A Richard as Protector. Pp. 293—295.

1. Seizes the person of Edward V., procures execution of the Queen's relations (the Greys) and his own appointment as Protector.
2. Accuses Hastings, the chief minister of Edward IV., of sorcery. "I will not dine till they have brought me your head." June 13.
3. Declares marriage of Edward IV. invalid. Accepts the Crown, June 26.

B Richard as King, appeals for national support as the restorer of the national liberties.

1. Parliament again convoked. 1484.

2. Measures of reform.

- a* "Benevolences" declared illegal.
- b* Interests of commerce protected by enactments.
- c* "Freedom for artificer or merchant stranger, of what nation or country he be, to bring into this realm and sell any manner of books, written or imprinted."
- d* Liberation of unenfranchised bondmen on the Royal domain.
- e* Seizure of goods before conviction of felony made illegal.

C Fall of Richard.

1. Disappearance and alleged murder of Edward V. and Richard of York.
2. Failure of revolt raised by Buckingham, constable of England. **Nov. 1483.**
3. Morton, Bishop of Ely, supports claim of Henry, Earl of Richmond, descended on the mother's side from John of Gaunt, through the House of Somerset (Beauforts)—see table of the rival claims (Henry VI., **E 1**). Proposed marriage of Henry to Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV., to unite the claims of the Houses.
4. Landing of Richard at Milford Haven. Battle of Bosworth Market (near Leicester). Death of Richard; Richmond crowned on the field of battle. **Aug. 22, 1485.**

Henry VII. 1485—1509.**A The Revolts.** P. 295.

1. Lambert Simnel personates Edward, Earl of Warwick, a prisoner in the Tower, *the last male Plantagenet*: recognised in Ireland, defeated at Stoke, **June 16**, and made a scullion in the Royal kitchen. **1487.**
2. Perkin Warbeck personates Richard, Duke of York: recognised by his aunt, Margaret of Burgundy, Charles VIII. of France, and James IV. of Scotland: finally captured at Beaulieu, and after two years imprisonment hanged at Tyburn. **1499.**

The introduction of gunpowder makes resistance to the Crown impossible, as the artillery is in the King's possession.

B Henry VII. as a King. Resumption of Policy of Edward IV. Pp. 295—297.

1. Though his right to the Crown rests on Parliamentary sanction, yet Parliament is only once convened during the last thirteen years of his reign. **1498—1509.**
2. The King's aim is to accumulate a treasure to make himself independent of Parliament, by means of economy, benevo-

lences, fines, subsidies granted under pretext of a French war (1492), aided in this by Cardinal Morton.

3. The power of the barons kept down
 - a by the enforcement of the Statute of Liveries (Edward IV.);
 - b by the revival of the *criminal* jurisdiction of the Royal Council.
4. Power given to justices of assize, or conservators of the peace, to try all cases except those of treason or felony without a jury. (Repealed at opening of next reign).

C The New Learning. Pp. 297—301.

1. The age of the Renaissance. "*The discovery of the world and of man.*"
 - a The discovery of the world. Copernicus, Vasco di Gama, Columbus, Cabot.
 - b The discovery of man. The travels of Amerigo Vespucci. Capture of Constantinople by the Ottoman Turks under Mahomet II. (May 29, 1453), and flight of the Greek scholars to Italy. "*Men opened their eyes and saw.*"
 - Re-discovery of the lost Greek poetry, philosophy, and art. "Greece crosses the Alps."
 - c Florence, the home of the Renaissance, as formerly of Liberty. From Florence Oxford receives *physical science* in Linacre, and *rational Christianity* in Colet.

D The Oxford Reformers: Colet, Erasmus, afterwards More.

1. Colet, the representative of the English Renaissance, religious and social rather than artistic. The aim of Colet's theology—a vivid realisation of the person of Christ. "*About the rest let divines dispute as they will.*"
2. Erasmus, the representative of the union of culture and liberal religion. Studies Greek at Oxford, introduces it at Cambridge.

E Foreign Relations. Pp. 302, 303.

1. France centralised and made more powerful by Lewis XI.; the great feudatories being extinguished, and war with England twice avoided. 1474 and 1492.
2. Spain formed into one great state by the union of Castile and Arragon, and enriched by the discovery of the New World.
3. Alliance between Henry and Spain to recover Guienne. 1489. Marriage between Arthur of England and Catherine of Arragon. 1501. After the death of Arthur, a papal dispensation obtained for the marriage of his youngest son Henry to Catherine. 1502.

4. Henry's eldest daughter Margaret married to James IV. of Scotland. 1502.

F Death of the King. April 21, 1509.

Henry VIII. 1509—1547.

A Accession of Henry VIII. Hopes of a new order. P. 301.

1. Execution of Empson and Dudley, thereby condemnation of his father's extortions.
2. The King still *young*, and a friend of the New Learning. Erasmus writes the "Praise of Folly," an ironical song of triumph over the old world of ignorance vanishing away. 1510.

Exhortations of Colet, now Dean of S. Paul's. 1505.

B Disappointment of these early hopes.

1. Attempt of the French to conquer Italy under Charles VIII. and Lewis XII. French "chased beyond the Alps" by Pope Julius II. as head of the Italian States, supported by Spain and England. 1512.
2. English invasion of France and battle of the Spurs. Scotch invasion of England and battle of Flodden. Desertion of Henry by Ferdinand, Sept. 19, 1513, and consequent peace with France, England having gained nothing by the war. 1514.

C The New Learning. Pp. 303—316.

1. Opposition to the war. The first time religion dissociates itself from the horrors of war.
2. Education favoured by Wolsey's peace policy and the election of a liberal Pope, Leo X.

a Foundation of S. Paul's school by Colet. 1512. The expulsion of the scholastic logic to make room for Greek; sympathy made the first requisite for teaching, followed by the foundation of grammar schools all over the country under Henry VIII., Edward VI., and Elizabeth.

b Revival of *Cambridge* under Erasmus, Fisher; at *Oxford* foundation of Corpus Christi with a Greek lectureship by Bishop Fox, of a professorship of Greek by the Crown, of Cardinal College by Wolsey.

3. Religious aims of the New Learning.

a Not a reform of doctrine so much as a reform of life and personal worship of Christ.

b A sound biblical criticism and freedom of inquiry.

c Hence a gradual separation between the New Learning and the dogmatic system of Luther.

4. Social and political aims of the New Learning best seen in Thomas More's *Utopia* (Nowhere). 1516.

a Character of More.

1 Sense of public duty.

(a) "First to look to God, and after God to the King."

(b) His resistance to Henry VII.'s demand for a heavy subsidy. "A beardless boy has disappointed the King's purpose." Forced to abandon public life till the King's death.

2 Affection for his wife and children and friends.

"When did nature mould a temper more gentle, and endearing, and happy, than the temper of Thomas More?"

3 His intellectual activity. His life of Edward V. (derived from Cardinal Morton) the first work written in Modern English prose (written during his forced retirement from public life).

b The *Utopia*.

1 *Labour*. The end of labour laws is the good of the labourers, not as in England to strengthen the rich against the poor. The period of toil shortened to nine hours a day, that labourers may garnish their minds, "for herein they conceive the felicity of life to consist."

2 *Public health*. Light, air, comfort, cleanliness, necessary for morality.

3 *Crime*.

(a) Prevention, *i.e.*, Education more effective than Punishment.

(b) Punishment should be proportioned to the crime. "*The end of all punishment is the destruction of vice and the saving of men.*"

4 *Religion*.

(a) Religion made to rest on nature and reason, hence atheists and disbelievers in immortality excluded from office as irrational.

(b) Religious toleration extended to all, for they are "*persuaded that it is not in a man's power to believe what he list.*"

(c) Liberty of conscience combined with religious unity and a common worship; contrast with this the strife of the Reformation (which begins the next year, 1517).

D Wolsey. 1515—1531. Pp. 316—324.

1. Aim of Wolsey's foreign policy to secure a French alliance, *i.e.*, to secure peace.

2. Aim of Wolsey's home policy, to use peace to advance despotism.

- a By means of the law-courts and legal decisions in favour of the royal prerogative.

- b By means of concentration of power into the hands of a *single minister*. Wolsey presides over the Law as Chancellor, over the Church as Legate—thus accustoming men to what afterwards became the royal supremacy in ecclesiastical matters. In consequence of crush of business in Chancery, subordinate courts—*e.g.*, that of the Master of the Rolls—appointed to relieve it.

- c By personal government without Parliament. 1515—1522.

3. In spite of Wolsey's opposition (shewn in the attitude of Buckingham, 1521, and the Field of the Cloth of Gold, 1520) Henry VIII. joins with his nephew, the Emperor Charles V. in declaring war against France, "to regain his lost inheritance." 1522.

4. Parliament therefore summoned, after eight years' interval, to provide for war expenses. Wolsey attempts to raise a forced loan, fails; *falls back on a* property-tax of twenty per cent. 1524. Forced by the Commons to accept one of ten per cent.; he demands a second forced loan, finally voluntary benevolences, but is driven to abandon his claim even to benevolences in consequence of the discontent, especially in London, Kent, and Suffolk.

5. Prevalence of agrarian discontent, owing to the increase of sheep-farming on a large scale, and the throwing together of small holdings, increased by the breaking up of the old feudal households (Edward IV. B 2. b, and Henry VII. B 2. a). More's only remedy, the gradual introduction of the woollen manufacture.

6. The divorce.

- a Battle of Pavia and prostration of France. Henry, getting no advantage from Spanish success, is induced by Wolsey to make peace with France. 1525.

- b Wolsey supports the idea of a divorce between Henry and Catherine, *his brother's widow*, in order to make a deadly quarrel between England and Spain, and hopes to negotiate a French marriage.

- c Henry defeats Wolsey's plans by announcing his resolve to marry Anne Boleyn. 1527.

- d In spite of the general disapproval of the divorce and second marriage, a Papal Commission is procured for the Cardinals Wolsey and Campeggio to try the facts of the case. Delays of the Cardinals in procedure; and adjournment to consult the Pope, Clement VII.

7. Fall of Wolsey. 1529, 1530.

- a* Wolsey banished from the Court for lack of zeal in furthering Henry's second marriage.
- b* Ministry of Norfolk and More. Attempt made to settle the divorce by negotiation with Charles V., and by the support of Parliament.
- c* Wolsey prosecuted for acting as Papal Legate in England, and thus transgressing the Statute of Præmunire.
- d* Wolsey at York ; through jealousy at his popularity in the North arrested for high treason ; dies on his way to London. **Nov. 29, 1530.**

8. Political character of Wolsey.

The one object of his public life to serve his King, not to serve his country, but the latter years of Henry's reign are far more tyrannical than those guided by Wolsey's counsel.

E Cromwell. 1530—1540. Pp. 325—340.

1. Cromwell's earlier life. Pp. 325, 326.

- a* After being a soldier in Italy, and a merchant and scrivener in Flanders, he enters Wolsey's service. **1517.** Faithful to him even in his fall.
- b* Gains the ear of the King by his faithfulness to Wolsey, and advises him to settle the divorce by his own supremacy.

2. Ministry of Norfolk and More. 1530. Pp. 326—328.

- a* Parliament again summoned. Close of Wolsey's policy of absolutism.
- b* More's policy as Chancellor : religious reform taken up as a national matter and combined with the preservation of the unity of the Church.
 - 1 A remonstrance against the legislation of the Clergy in Convocation without the consent of the nation (see Edward I. **E 1. f**), and against other ecclesiastical abuses ; the clergy restricted from lay employments ; pluralities restrained, and a correct translation of the Bible undertaken.
 - 2 Laws against sectaries strictly enforced.
- c* Fall of the ministry owing to the failure of its negotiations for divorce.
 - 1 The Pope (Clement VII.) anxious to obtain the restoration of Florence from Charles V. delays his decision.
 - 2 Cranmer proposes an appeal to the Universities of Europe. The result adverse to the King.

3. Cromwell's policy. Pp. 328—334.

- a* The King to declare himself Head of the Church within his realm, and obtain the divorce from his own courts.

- δ The Church (the only surviving check on the royal absolutism) to be reduced to a department of the State, and all authority to be concentrated in the Crown.
- 1' The clergy fined for accepting Wolsey's authority as Legate (under the Statute of Præmunire) and forced to acknowledge the King as "*Protector and only supreme Head of the Church and Clergy of England.*" 1531.
 - 2 Remonstrance of the Pope (Clement VII.) followed by the Statute of Appeals, forbidding all further appeals to the Court of Rome, and the coronation of Anne Boleyn. The King's marriage with Katherine proclaimed null and void. 1533.
 - 3 Bishops to be appointed by the King: chapters compelled to act on the King's *congé d'élire* (still in force, though practically the appointment has passed from the King in person to the Minister who represents the will of the nation).
 - 4 *The Act of Supremacy*, vesting all authority, ecclesiastical as well as civil, in the Crown, and the *Act of Succession* sanctioning the marriage with Anne Boleyn and declaring the religious validity of the divorce. 1534.
 - 5 Cromwell appointed as Vicar-General (the King's representative in all matters ecclesiastical). 1535.
 - (a) The pulpits "tuned" by means of preaching licences, and thus made instruments of the Royal Power.
 - (b) A purified Catholicism to be the religion of the land; based on the Bible, the three Creeds, the three Sacraments (Baptism, the Lord's Supper, Penance), Transubstantiation, Justification by Faith, prayers but not masses for the dead, general retention of the ceremonies of the Church, but suppression of pilgrimages and discouragement of image and relic worship.
 - (c) Translation into English of the Creed, the Lord's Prayer, and the Ten Commandments, preliminary to the translation of the Bible by Coverdale, which is issued 1536.
 - (d) Dissolution of the monasteries whose income falls below 200*l.* a year; their revenues granted to the Crown. 1536. Practically the realisation of the aims of Erasmus and the New Learning, but brought about by brute force, not by enlightenment.
4. The Reign of Terror. Pp. 334—337.
- a An organised spy-system. "Men felt as if a scorpion

lay sleeping under every stone;" even silence interpreted into misprision of treason.

- b* The Executions. The Church, the New Learning, the Baronage, struck at through their noblest representatives, the Carthusians, Bishop Fisher, Thomas More, Lady Salisbury.
- 1 Seven of the Brethren of the Charter House hanged, five imprisoned in Newgate till they died, for unsatisfactory answers about the Royal Supremacy.
- 2 Bishop Fisher, of Rochester, "the most inflexibly honest Churchman of the age," beheaded, for refusal to take the oath of supremacy. **June 22, 1535.**
- 3 Thomas More.
 - (*a*) More (the representative of the New Learning) resigns the Chancellorship. *Civil freedom too dear a price for religious reform.*
 - (*b*) Imprisoned for refusal to take the part of the oath of succession, declaring the religious validity of the divorce; executed **July 2, 1535.** (See Froude's account of his death.)
- 5. The Revolts. Pp. 337—339.
 - a* In Lincolnshire, religious and agrarian discontent. **1536.**
 - b* In Yorkshire and Durham, *the Pilgrimage of Grace*, meeting of a Parliament of the North at Pomfret, to obtain reunion with the Catholic Church, the recognition of Princess Mary, Catherine's daughter, as heir, the restoration of the monasteries, the fall of Cromwell. **1536, 1537.**
 - c* The Pilgrimage dispersed by the promise of a Free Parliament at York.
 - d* Ruthless execution of those concerned in the Pilgrimage. *Lady Bulmer burnt at the stake.* Execution of Lord Montague (elder brother of Reginald Pole) and attainder and imprisonment of *Margaret Plantagenet (the last of the race)*, Countess of Salisbury, on the charge of treasonable correspondence with her son (Reginald Pole), author of "The Unity of the Church," in which he appealed to the Emperor to execute the bull of deposition by Pope Paul IV. **1538.** Margaret executed **1541.**
 - e* The suppression of the revolts followed by the dissolution of the greater abbeys. **1539.**
- 6. The success of Cromwell's measures involves the ruin of his policy. Pp. 340—342.
 - a* The wealth proceeding from dissolution of the lesser monasteries (**1536**) and the greater abbeys (**1539**) spent by Cromwell in forming a Royal party.

Hence the rise of a new aristocracy, (*e.g.*, Russells, Cavendishes,) and consequent reappearance of political independence among the *nobles*.

- b* Cromwell's religious changes inspire new energy into the *people* at large, for which a centre is provided by Cromwell himself through his revival of Parliaments.

7. The Protestants. Pp. 342—347.

- a* The Protestants before the quarrel with Rome.

- 1 *Tyndale* revives the religious side of Lollardism. His Scriptures and tracts (printed in Germany) read eagerly at *Cambridge and Oxford*, in spite of Wolsey's interference.

- 2 *Latimer* (born 1490), a *Cambridge* student, the greatest of English popular preachers, *not a theologian, but a moral reformer*. Protected from persecution by Wolsey, as patron of the New Learning.

- 3 Wolsey's fall followed by keener measures against the sectaries under Norfolk and More (1530).

- b* The quarrel with Rome, followed by an outbreak of Protestant violence; destruction of images, and travesties of the mass "hocus-pocus."

- c* Consequent reaction of the King and nation.

- 1 The Law of the Six Articles, sanctioning transubstantiation, communion in one kind, celibacy of the clergy, monastic vows, private masses, auricular confession. 1539.

- 2 Revival of persecution: arrested by Cromwell's counter-influence.

8. Fall of Cromwell. Pp. 347, 348.

- a* To the last, sole administrator of all departments of the State, and president of the Star Chamber (*representing the criminal jurisdiction of the Royal Council in cases where justice was baffled by the power of the offenders in the Lower Courts*). See Henry II. E 2, and Table of Law Courts.

- b* After the execution of Anne Boleyn for adultery (1536), and the death of Jane Seymour in childbirth (1537), Cromwell negotiates a marriage with Anne of Cleves, *in order to form a league of the North German Princes and France for the overthrow of the Empire*. (This if carried out might have saved the Thirty Years' War.)

- c* Failure of the political project; discontent of Henry with his bride and with Cromwell. Cromwell arrested for treason, and condemned without being heard, "judged by the bloody laws himself had made." July 28, 1540.

d Devotion to the King not loyalty to the law his guiding principle. *He loved the King no less than he loved God.*

F The last Years of Henry VIII. 1540—1547. P. 349.

1. Separation from Anne of Cleves, and marriage with Catherine Howard, beheaded for unchastity. **Feb. 12, 1542.** Marriage with Catherine Parr. **1543.**
2. Norfolk resumes his previous policy, religious reform and preservation of unity by means of a general council.
3. Treaty between England and the Emperor Charles V., *to bring about a General Council for the Purification of the Church.* **1543—1546.** War with France in conjunction with the Emperor; Boulogne held in pledge by the English for the payment of the war expenses. **1544.**
4. Council meets at Trent. Disappointment of Norfolk's hopes, Establishment of Inquisition in Flanders by Charles V. **1543.**
5. Reaction of Norfolk towards Rome in consequence of his failure in a middle course; burning of Anne Ascue for denying transubstantiation.
6. Henry, determined not to go back to obedience to Rome, changes the mass into a communion service, imprisons Norfolk, makes Lord Hertford, brother of Jane Seymour, head of the Council of Regency. **1547.**
7. The Crown settled by Parliament on Henry's children (Edward, Mary, Elizabeth) and their heirs; in failure of them bequeathed by Henry to the descendants not of his elder sister Margaret (married to James IV. of Scotland), but to his younger sister Mary (married to the Duke of Suffolk). (See Table at beginning of Mary's reign.)
8. Death of Henry VIII. **January 28, 1547.**

G Henry and his People. *Perfect fear cast out love.*

Edward VI. 1547—1553.

A Chief Points in which the Reformed is Opposed to the Old Religion. (See Hallam, Const. Hist., chap. II.)

1. Substitution of English for the old Latin Ritual.
2. Removal of images from churches, leading to wanton destruction, and defacement of them.
3. The rejection of the *popular* deities (virgin and saints) of the Old Religion, and of prayers and masses for the dead.
4. Disuse (though without formal condemnation) of Auricular Confession.
5. Rejection of the old doctrine of Transubstantiation in the Lord's Supper. The Reformers divided between three theories;

- a* The Theory of Luther—Consubstantiation. The two substances so united that the elements may either be called bread and wine, or the body and blood.
- b* The Theory of Zwingle and the Calvinists. The Lord's Supper a commemoration, the bread and wine merely symbols.
- c* The Theory of Bucer. Christ's body and blood not *locally* present in the elements, but really, and without figure, received by the worthy communicants through faith. *A real but not a corporeal presence.*

6. Release of the priesthood from its obligation to celibacy.

B The Protectorate of Lord Hertford, afterwards Duke of Somerset. 1547—1549. Pp. 350, 351.

1. Somerset, in defiance of Henry's will, expels the representatives of the Old Religion from the Council of Regency, and seizes the sole power with the title of Protector.
2. Somerset's invasion of Scotland, in pursuance of his policy to unite England and Scotland by a marriage between Edward and Mary Stuart, daughter of James V. Defeat of the Scots at Pinkie Cleugh. **Sept. 10, 1547.** Mary however married to Francis, Dauphin of France, son of Henry II.
3. Somerset seeks popularity by retreating from Henry's position of pure absolutism. Repeal of the statute giving royal proclamations the force of law.
4. Prohibitions of Lollardry removed; law of Six Articles repealed; images ordered to be removed from churches; Communion administered in both kinds, and in English; *a Catechism drawn up by Cranmer; an English Book of Common Prayer put forth.* **1548.**
5. Imprisonment of Gardiner for denouncing all ecclesiastical changes made in the King's minority. Restrictions in preaching and "tuning" of the pulpits.
6. Opposition to the Protector. **1549.**
 - a* Lord Seymour of Sudely marries Queen Catherine Parr, and plots against his brother the Protector. Executed without a trial, **March 20, 1549.**
 - b* In the West (Cornwall and Devon), from religious discontent.
 - c* In the East (Norfolk), from agrarian discontent; the demands of the insurgents not discouraged by the Protector, hence his resignation. **1549.** Execution of Somerset, **Jan. 22, 1552.**

C The Protectorate of Warwick, afterwards Duke of Northumberland, and Increase of Protestant Misrule. 1549—1553. Pp. 351—353.

1. *Revision of the Prayer Book*, a nearer approach made to the Protestantism of Geneva: framing of the Forty—

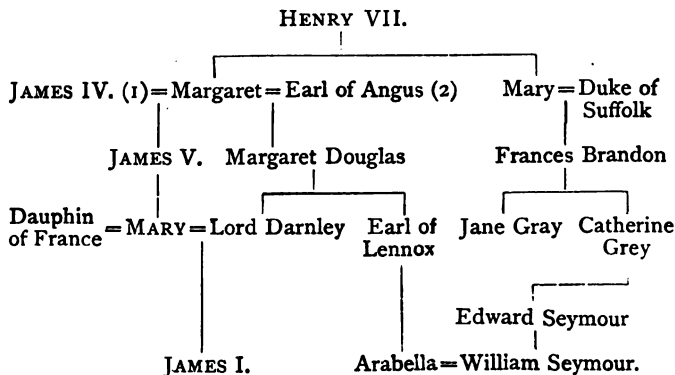
Articles of Religion, to be signed by all clergymen and schoolmasters. 1552.

2. Quarrels among the Protestants; no uniformity or even decency in ritual; decrease in the number of students at the Universities.
3. Foundation of grammar schools out of the spoils of the monasteries, the one noble measure of the time.
4. General misrule, both under Somerset and Warwick.
 - a Royal expenditure four times as great as before.
 - b Crown lands given away to personal friends of the two Protectors.
 - c Debasement of the coinage.
 - d Surrender of Boulogne to France (see Henry VIII. F 3.), to prevent its being taken.

Mar. 1553—1558.

A Northumberland's (Warwick's) "Plan" to Regulate the Succession. Pp. 353, 354.

1. Table showing the descendants of daughters of Henry VII.



2. The settlement of the succession, though confirmed by Act of Parliament, illegally altered. Mary and Elizabeth passed over as bastards; Jane Grey, grand-daughter of Mary, younger daughter of Henry VII., named as successor, to the exclusion of her mother, Frances Brandon, and married to Northumberland's son, Guildford Dudley.
3. Failure of the "plan," owing to the discontent of the nation. Even in Protestant London "not one calls 'God speed ye.'" Imprisonment of Northumberland and Jane Grey. 1553.

4. Reaction in favour of the old religion, except in the matter of the confiscation of the Church lands and the rejection of the Papal supremacy.

B The Spanish Marriage (with Philip, son of Charles V.), Pp. 354—356.

1. Mary attracted to the marriage partly by religious, partly by political reasons, to secure herself against the claims of Mary Stuart, married to the Dauphin of France.
2. Discontent of the English : the marriage involves the ruin of the New Religion, and also the New Learning. Insurrection of Kent, under Sir Thomas Wyatt, through hatred of the Spaniards, crushed by the courage of the Queen. 1554.
3. The Queen's revenge. Execution of Jane Grey, Suffolk (her father), and Thomas Wyatt. 1554.
4. Marriage of Mary and Philip at Winchester. July, 1554.

C The Submission to Rome and the Protestant Martyrs.

1. Arrival of Reginald Pole, as Papal Legate ; the Houses of Parliament receive absolution on their knees. Nov. 30, 1554.
2. Opposition of Parliament to a purely Catholic policy. Refusal to settle the succession on Philip or to give up the Church lands.
3. Effect produced by the Protestants, who know at least *how to die*.
 - a Revival of the Statute de Hæretico Comburendo (see Henry IV. A 2.). Martyrdom of Taylor, vicar of Hadleigh.
 - b Martyrdom of Bishop Hooper at Gloucester ; of Bishop Ferrars, at Carmarthen ; of Bishops Latimer and Ridley, at Oxford. Oct. 16, 1555.
 - c Recantation and martyrdom of Cranmer, the second Bishop in Western Christendom ; these martyrdoms, especially that of Cranmer, the death-blow to Catholicism in England.

D The Death of Mary. Pp. 360, 361.

1. Departure of Philip, partly owing to the failure of the Catholic policy, partly owing to Mary's childlessness.
2. Persecution urged on by Mary. Growing indignation of the people. "You have lost the hearts of twenty thousand that were rank Papists within these twelve months."
3. War with France to support Philip. Capture of Calais by the Duke of Guise, the last English possession in France. Jan. 7, 1558.
4. Death of Mary. Nov. 17, 1558.

Elizabeth. 1558—1603.

A The Time. P. 362.

1. Defeat abroad (France mistress of the Channel, and the old social discontent at home).
2. Religiously, the party of the New Learning dissolved; the Protestants fiercer, the Catholics bound closer to Rome.
3. The style and arms of an English Sovereign adopted by Mary Stuart of Scotland, wife of Francis II. of France.
4. Exhaustion of the Treasury by the Protestant misrule under Edward, Mary's attempted restoration of the Church lands, and French war.

B The Character of Elizabeth. Pp. 362—370.

1. Beneath her love of pleasure and flattery her nature, purely intellectual, hard as steel, untinctured by the affections.
2. Her policy marked by a woman's simplicity and tenacity of purpose.

a In the choice of her aims—to preserve her throne, to keep England out of war, to restore order.

b In the pursuit of her aims.

- 1 The rejection of large schemes of ambition, *e.g.*, the presidency of a Protestant league and the sovereignty of the Low Countries.
- 2 Her scheming policy, which gains time, *i.e.*, strength.
- 3 Her self-confidence and vigour, when she believes she is strong enough to act.

c In the selection of the right men to carry out her aims—statesmen, financiers, discoverers, divines.

3 Her real greatness lies in her power over her people, gained

a By the wide range of her sympathies.

b By the wisdom and vigour of her government.

c By her boldness in the solution of the agrarian difficulty through the system of poor-laws.

d By her economy and maintenance of peace.

e By the absence (especially in her earlier years) of persecution.

f By her respect for the opinion of the people (as in the surrender of monopolies).

g By her love for the people. "No worldly thing under the sun is so dear to me as the love and goodwill of my subjects."

4 Her life marked by a terrible loneliness.

a The loneliness of her position. The last of the Tudors. "I am but a barren stock." Marriage

impossible to her owing to the strife between the Old and New Religion.

- b* Moral isolation : her nature purely intellectual without love and without hate (see her ingratitude to Drake in the matter of stores against the Armada, to Walsingham, to Davison).
- c* Religious isolation from her people and the religious feelings of the time. Public order her leading idea. No conception of theological zeal, hence her requirement of outer conformity, which "leaves opinion free."

C The Settlement of Religion. Pp. 369—372.

1. Elizabeth at first adopts her father's policy—royal supremacy and dissolution of the monasteries, with the addition of freedom of conscience.
2. Driven on by the Protestant feeling of the people, she gives up the celibacy of the clergy and the use of the crucifix.
3. Appointment of Parker as Primate to restore order in discipline and worship. 1559.
 - a* Catholics forbidden, by a prohibition from Rome, to be present at the new worship. Absentees thereupon fined for "recusancy." 1562.
 - b* Thirty-nine Articles (of Edward's forty-two) constituted the Standard of Belief. 1563.
 - c* A commission appointed to enforce the Act of Uniformity in Public Worship. 1564.

D Elizabeth and Scotland. Pp. 372—374.

1. History of Scotland from the beginning of the Hundred Years' War. 1339. (See Edward I. A 2, and Edward II. B.)
 - a* Scotland as an ally of France in the war.
 - 1 Battle of Neville's Cross, near Durham, **October 12, 1346**. David Bruce defeated and kept a prisoner till 1357.
 - 2 Raids and skirmishes such as Otterburn (near the Reed), where a dead Douglas wins the field, **August 19, 1388** (see the ballad of Chevy Chase); and Homildon Hill, **September 14, 1402**.
 - b* The power of the Crown sinks into insignificance. Strife between the Houses of Douglas and of March. Invasion by Donald of the Isles and the Highlanders of the West. Donald defeated at *Harrowlaw* (near Aberdeen), **July 21, 1411**. *The Lowlands saved from the rule of the Celt*.
 - c* Return of James I. from his captivity and education in England, **1424**. Organisation of Scotland, and submission of the Highland clans. Murder of James. **1436**.

- d* Strife between the House of Douglas and the Crown.
Final supremacy of the Crown in the Lowlands by the defeat of the Douglasses at Arkinholm (in Eskdale), 1454; in the Highlands by the annexation of Orkney and Shetland as pledges for the payment of the marriage dowry of Margaret of Norway, 1469, and by the breaking up of the Lordship of the Isles. 1504.
- e* Marriage of James IV. to Margaret Tudor, daughter of Henry VII. 1502.
- f* Henry VIII. revives claim of English supremacy.
 - 1 Invasion of England by James IV., and battle of Flodden. September 9, 1513.
 - 2 James V. intrigues with the English Catholics, defeated by Somerset at Solway Moss. Birth of Mary Stuart. "It came with a lass, and it will go with a lass." 1542.
 - 3 Somerset's invasion of Scotland to bring about marriage of Edward VI. and Mary Stuart. Fruitless victory of Somerset at Pinkie Cleugh (near Musselburgh), 1547. Mary of Lorraine (widow of James V. and Regent) marries Mary Stuart to Francis II. then Dauphin of France, leading in consequence to the counter-marriage between Mary of England and Philip of Spain.
- 2. Elizabeth's accession and Mary Stuart's claims to the English Crown.
 - a* Elizabeth gains a year by raising the hopes of the English Catholics as to her conversion, while she intrigues with the Scotch Protestant nobles, "The Lords of the Congregation."
 - b* Elizabeth suddenly attacks the French force in Scotland. Siege and capitulation of Leith. Treaty of Edinburgh, and admission by the French of Elizabeth's title. 1560.
- 3. Mary Stuart. Pp. 375—384.
 - a* Death of Francis II., and landing of Mary Stuart in Scotland. 1561. Mary's charm of manner, and political ability, wins to her all Scotchmen except Knox. Refusal of her claim to be recognised in Parliament as Elizabeth's successor. "I am not so foolish as to hang a winding sheet before my own eyes." France parted from Scotland by the downfall of the Guises, and the supremacy of Catherine of Medicis. 1563.
 - b* Disappointed in France, Mary appeals to the English Catholics, suffering from the passing of the Test Act (1562), by a marriage with Henry Darnley, grandson of Margaret Tudor, thus uniting their sympathies.

James IV. = Margaret Tudor = (2) Earl of Angus.

James V. Margaret Douglas = Earl of Lennox.

Mary Stuart = Henry Stuart, Lord Darnley.

c The Darnley murder. Mary ruins her cause by her marriage with the Earl of Bothwell, the reputed murderer of Lord Darnley. 1567. Mary's surrender to the nobles at Carberry (near Musselburgh), June 15, 1567, and imprisonment at Loch Leven.

d Mary in England. Mary escapes from Loch Leven but is defeated at Langsyde (on the Clyde). 1568. She then makes her way to Carlisle, where she demands

1 Restoration to her Throne. Impossible, without public examination of her crimes.

2 If not a free passage to France. Also impossible, without bringing on French intervention in Scotland.

e Fruitless attempts of Elizabeth to effect a compromise between Regent Murray and Mary.

f The Catholic Revolts.

1 Fierce political strife between Cecil, urging a Protestant League, war with Spain, and surrender of Mary to the Scots, and the Duke of Norfolk (supported by the merchants from their anxiety to keep the Flemish trade), and recognition of Mary Stuart as successor to the Crown.

2 Rising of the Percies and Nevilles. 1569. Fails through inaction of the mass of the Catholics in the country.

3 Bull of excommunication and deposition against Elizabeth issued by Pius V. 1571.

4 Mary wins over Norfolk by hopes of marriage and appeals to Spain to interfere with arms. All public magistrates in England compelled to sign the Articles of Faith. (A measure of precaution against suspected treason.) Norfolk and Northumberland executed. 1572. Fears of an English revolt in favour of Mary at an end.

E The England of Elizabeth.

1. The removal of the old social and agrarian discontent. (See Edward III. D, Edward IV. B 2. *b*, Henry VIII. D 5., Edward VI. B 6.)

a A distinction made between "sturdy beggars" and "paupers"; labour made compulsory for the vagabond, and each parish made responsible for its paupers.

b Improvement in methods of agriculture necessitating the employment of a greater number of hands.

- c Development of manufactures (see Henry VIII. D 5.).
 - 1 Woollen manufacture in the West.
 - 2 Worsted manufacture at Norwich and in the Eastern counties.
 - 3 Iron manufactures in Kent and Sussex beginning to be threatened with decline from exhaustion of the forests.
 - 4 Tin and copper mining in Cornwall.
 - 5 Mining and manufactures chiefly confined to the South and West. But even in the North, friezes made at Manchester, coverlets at York, cloth at Halifax.
- d English commerce encouraged by the peace and order of Elizabeth's reign.
 - 1 Beginning of the carrying trade, especially with Flanders.
 - 2 Siege and capture of Antwerp by the Duke of Parma, and flight of the merchants mainly to London; transfers the commercial supremacy from Antwerp to London.
 - 3 Increasing commercial prosperity shown by the foundation of the Royal Exchange, by Sir Thomas Gresham, 1566; the growth of Boston, Hull, and the importance of Bristol, as the headquarters of the trade with *Ireland*, now for the first time conquered and colonised (see Henry II. F).
 - 4 Expeditions to find a northern passage to India leading to the discovery of Archangel and opening of Russian trade.
 - 5 Voyages to the coast of Guinea for gold-dust and ivory *leading to the beginnings of the Slave Trade*, under John Hawkins. 1562.
 - 6 Increasing number of English fishers in the Channel, German Ocean, off the Coast of Ulster, and in the cod-banks of Newfoundland.
 - 7 Formation of great merchant companies (*e.g.*, Russian and Indian companies).
- e Consequent general well-being of the country.
 - 1 Growth of luxury. Disuse among the yeomen of salt fish for meat, pewter for silver; large consumption of wine.
 - 2 *Rise of the conception of domestic comfort*: first introduction of the chimney corner, and of pillows, carpets, and windows.
 - 3 Change in architecture shewing the extinction of the feudal nobility (see Edward IV. B 2. b, and Henry VIII. D 5.); the Elizabethan hall takes the place of the mediæval fortress.

2. State of English Literature. Pp. 390—393.

a As yet little literary effect produced by the Renaissance ; intelligence now quickened among the *traders* by the growth of the grammar schools, translations of Greek and Latin classics (*e.g.*, Chapman's Homer) : among the nobles by the love of foreign travel.

b Change in historical writing from pure narrative to an attempt to reconstruct the past (*e.g.*, the writings of Daniel) and extension of historical research beyond the national bounds (*e.g.*, Knolle's History of the Turks, and Raleigh's History of the World).

c Influence of Italy on English Literature.

1 Euphuism (with a "mint of phrases" and "the music of its ever vain tongue," but proceeding from the delight in increased vocabulary, and greater delicacy of style).

2 The rise of English prose seen first in Sydney's Defence of Poesy, then in the "pamphlets" of Nash and Greene, originally in imitation of the Italian novelettes : in which finally English prose discards euphuism, literature, and descends from the closet to the street.

3. Political state of the country. Pp. 393—397.

a Theoretically, the power of the Crown remains unimpaired ; practically, exercised with caution and moderation. Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth driven to "pack" the Lower House, from the difficulty of "managing" it.

b Increasing wealth of the country gentry shown by discontinuance of the payment of members by their constituencies.

c Elizabeth, though averse to Parliaments, compelled to call them to procure subsidies ; hence fresh privileges gained by the House of Commons.

1 Freedom of its members from arrest, save by permission of the House.

2 Freedom of speech on matters of State (though resisted by the Queen), notably on the settlement of the succession, the ecclesiastical supremacy of the Crown, and Royal interference with trade (*abolition of monopolies, 1601*).

4. Religious state of the country. Pp. 398—402.

a The new Protestantism.

1 The growth of a learned and heartily Protestant clergy (Hooker, George Herbert).

2 General revolution in English religious thought seen by the increase of Puritanism in the University of Oxford.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 3 Protestantism and loyalty made almost synonymous by the Bull of Deposition published by Pius V. 1570.
- 4 Protestantism made intenser by Alva's butcheries in Flanders and the massacre on S. Bartholomew's day in France. 1572.
- b New outburst of Roman Catholic zeal.
 - 1 Establishment of a seminary of priests at Douay. Influence of the seminary priests on the Roman Catholic gentry, leading to a strict execution of the Test Act and the martyrdom of seminary priests (*i.e.*, the English priests educated abroad, chiefly at Douay), such as Cuthbert Mayne.
 - 2 Establishment of a Jesuit mission in England, under Parsons and Campian, both Oxford scholars. 1580. Torture and martyrdom of Campian, and extermination of Jesuits, leading to the *severance of the English Roman Catholics from the National Church*.

F The Armada.

1. Horror of Catholic Europe at the Jesuit martyrdoms. Spain only withheld from attacking England by Philip's European ambition, *the wide distribution of his dominions, and his natural timidity*.
2. Elizabeth's Spanish Policy.
 - a Originally, to use France as a balance against Spain. France soon powerless through religious strife.
 - b Then to use the revolt of the Netherlands "as a bridle of Spain to keep war out of our own gate," hence her refusal of the possession of Holland and Zealand, 1575, and her advice to the Netherlands to submit religiously if they retained their political rights.
3. The Sea-dogs. Pp. 405—407.
 - a The balanced neutrality of Elizabeth not shared by the country.
 - 1 The seamen of the southern coast accept letters of marque from the Prince of Condé and the Huguenots. *The Sea-dogs*. 1562.
 - 2 Englishmen volunteer under the Prince of Orange, up finally to the number of five thousand. 1583.
 - b After the suspension of war in France, the "Sea-dogs" sail to the West Indies, selling negroes and making raids on the Spanish Main; notably Francis Drake, who sails through the Straits of Magellan, sweeps the coasts of Chili and Peru, and returns by the Cape of Good Hope with plunder of half-a-million. 1577—1580. Knighted by the Queen on his return.

4. Spanish Policy towards England altered by three events.
Pp. 407—409.

a Assassination of the Prince of Orange (1584), which seems to settle the fate of *Flanders*, in spite of the exertions of an English army under Leicester. 1585.

b Henry of Navarre, a Huguenot, becomes heir to the Crown of France. Consequent resumption of the religious war in France, to prevent the succession of a Huguenot King; Philip II. thus freed from danger on the side of *France*.

c The death of Mary Stuart. February 8, 1587.

1 The murder of William of Orange, combined with Elizabeth's persecution at home, gives rise to assassination plots among the English Roman Catholics (*e.g.*, Somerville, Parry, Babington).

2 Consequent indignation of the nation, especially with Mary Stuart, as the fomentor of them. Trial and condemnation of Mary; Elizabeth gives a sullen consent, throwing the responsibility on her ministers; Mary executed February 8, 1587.

In consequence of this Philip of Spain *claims the succession to the Crown of England as the nearest in blood of the Catholic faith*.

5. The Armada. Pp. 409—411.

a At the news of the approaching invasion Drake "singes the Spanish King's beard," by burning the ships in the harbour of Cadiz. 1587.

b The Duke of Parma collects an army of 30,000 men, and a transport fleet at Cadiz. 1587. The sailing of the Armada delayed till next year.

c The Armada seen off the Lizard. July 29, 1588.

d The defeat of the Armada.

1 The Armada harassed by a running fight of a week up the Channel to Calais. "Its feathers plucked one by one."

2 Lord Howard forces an action in Calais Roads, by sending fireships among the Spanish fleet. Panic of the Armada; attempts to make its way back to Spain by sailing round the Orkneys.

3 The Armada destroyed by the storms, and by the wild Islesmen and Irish. (Eight thousand Spaniards lost between Giant's Causeway and the Blaskets.)

e The causes of the defeat of the Armada.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 1 The increase of the strength of England through the quiet of Elizabeth's reign.
- 2 The united feeling of the country. (No chance of a Roman Catholic rising in favour of a Spanish King.)
- 3 The superiority of the English fleet in ships and men. English ships twice as fast as the Spanish; Howard (High Admiral) backed by Hawkins, Frobisher, Drake.
- f English military preparations in case of a Spanish landing: an army under Leicester at Tilbury; the militia of the midland counties gathering on London, the militia of S. and E. guarding the coast.

G The Elizabethan Poets.

1. Characteristics of the age.

- a *Restlessness and curiosity* produced by the discoveries of Copernicus, Kepler, Galileo; the conquests of Cortez and Pizarro; the voyages of Amerigo Vespucci, Jenkinson, Willoughby, and Drake.
- b A special interest in *man* stimulated by the many voyages and discoveries (seen in Shakespeare's study of Caliban, Bacon's essays, and the popularity of the drama).
- c The thrill of national triumph over the Armada.

2. Edmund Spenser.

- a Early history of Spenser. A courtier under the patronage of Sidney and Leicester; *publishes the Shepherds' Calendar, 1579*; loses his position at court through Burleigh's ill-will, and leaves for Ireland as Lord Grey's secretary; finishes the first three books of the *Faerie Queen*, at Kilcolman, near Cork, 1590.

b The *Faerie Queen*.

- 1 Beginning of the *continuous* stream of English poetry.
- 2 An expression of the life of the time; of the mysticism of the middle ages, and the intellectual freedom of the revival of letters.
- 3 In its religious theory, serious and Puritan to the core. The "false Duessa" represents Rome and Mary Stuart; the end of the poem the Divine glory as the true end of human effort. Spenser's Puritanism free from narrowness. Outer beauty springs from the beauty of the soul within.

c The end of Spenser's life.

Marriage, and completion of other three books of the *Faerie Queen, 1596*; and of the *View of the Present State of Ireland*. Revolt in Ireland, burning of Spenser's house at Kilcolman. Spenser

himself said to have died from want of bread in an inn at Westminster. 1599.

3. The Elizabethan drama. Pp. 417—421.

- a Partly Italian, in its grossness, and its free use of the horrible and unnatural.
- b Resembles the Spanish drama, in its use of the language of ordinary life, its complicated plot, its intermixture of comedy and tragedy.
- c In its main points the work of the English people. *"The drama represents the very age and body of the time, his form and pressure."*
- d The first public play-house erected at Blackfriars, by the "Earl of Leicester's servants," 1576. By 1603 eighteen play-houses in London alone.
- e Greene and Marlowe representatives of the early dramatists.

Greene, wild in life but pure in writing, dies in a shoemaker's house.

"Time loosely spent will not again be won :
My time is loosely spent, and I undone."

Marlowe. 1564—1594. The first historical playwright, as in his play of Edward II.; the first philosophic dramatist, as in his play of Faustus.

4. Shakespeare. Pp. 421—428.

- a Shakespeare as an actor and refitter of pieces for the stage (Pericles, Titus Andronicus). "Shakescene an upstart crow beautified with our feathers." By this he gains a sense of theatrical necessities, and tests his pieces, as he writes them, by the stage.
- b 1593—1598. The first period of independent creation. Venus and Adonis, "the first heir of my invention." Love's Labour Lost, } marked by the gaiety of
Taming of the Shrew, } youth.
Comedy of Errors,
The Two Gentlemen of Verona.

Midsummer Night's Dream. { The first appear-
Romeo and Juliet. { ance of rich fancy,
 and of "resistless
 Passion."

His historical plays (King Richard III., King John, King Henry IV., King Henry V.) marked by a larger and deeper conception of human nature, English humour, love of hard fighting, belief in the doom of the guilty, pity for the fallen.

- c 1598—1608. Publication of the Sonnets.

Merchant of Venice, Merry Wives of Windsor, Twelfth Night.

As You Like It. Touches of sadness mingling with his laughter. Revolt and execution of Essex, Southampton imprisoned, Pembroke banished

from Court (1601), the play of Richard II. possibly suggested by and connected with the revolt.

(Gloom of Shakespeare's mind.) Measure for Measure, Hamlet, Lear, Timon, all presenting one idea—the censure of mankind.

d 1608—1616. The classical plays: Cæsar, Antony, Coriolanus, the last assertion of the Renascence against the inroads of Puritanism; *man and man's nature Shakespeare's chief subject of interest*: as to all beyond he is silent, "We are such stuff as dreams are made of, and our little life is rounded by a sleep."

5. Ben Jonson's Plays.

a A return to classical severity as against writers who "had small Latin and less Greek."

b A moral and satirical effort to reform manners.

c Decay of the drama before new and graver themes—preparing the way for the great rebellion.

H The Conclusion of the War with Spain. P. 430.

1. Spanish coast plundered by Drake and Norris. 1589.

2. The West Indies plundered by Drake; Philip plans a new Armada; English descent upon Cadiz. 1596.

3. Wreck of the second Armada in the Bay of Biscay. 1597. From this time Spanish attempts on England are made through France.

4. Elizabeth supports Henry of Navarre as French King against Philip and the League; Henry submits to the faith of the majority of his people, and France becomes again a united nation.

I Elizabeth and Ireland.

1. Ireland and the Angevins and Plantagenets. Pp. 431—435.

a Decay of Ireland between the eighth and the twelfth century.

1 Religiously. No organization in Church.

2 Politically. No central authority. Civilization destroyed in the wars with the Danes. Nothing left but some coast towns (Dublin, Waterford), Danish rather than Irish, and a number of isolated "septs" (communities resembling enlarged families).

b Henry II. forms the idea of attacking Ireland nominally to put down the *slave trade from England, and to bring Ireland into the Latin obedience.*

c The conquest of Ireland really begun by Strongbow (Earl of Pembroke), acting as Dermot's mercenary. 1169.

d Henry II. passes over to Ireland, and begins erection of castles. Recalled by troubles at home.

- e* The English Pale (boundary) consists of Drogheda, Dublin, Wexford, Waterford, Cork : so the country is split into two halves, whose conflict has never ceased.
- f* *John* divides the Pale into counties, and introduces English law. 1210.
- g* Victory of the Barons over the Irish clans, supported by Edward Bruce, at Athenry, near Dundalk. 1317.
- h* The Statute of Kilkenny forbidding marriage between the English and the Irishry, the adoption of the Irish dress, the use of the Brehon law. 1357.
- i* Efforts of Richard II. to enforce law and conciliate the nations. 1394.
- j* Till the days of the Tudors Ireland left to itself.

2. Ireland and the Tudors. Pp. 435—445.

a Henry VII.

- 1 The great barons defiant of royal authority.
- 2 Growing "degradation" of the English ; border of the Pale retreats towards Dublin.
- 3 Henry VII.'s policy to make the Earl of Kildare, the most turbulent man, governor. "All Ireland cannot rule this man, then shall he rule all Ireland."

b Henry VIII. Beginning of an effective rule.

- 1 Utter defeat of the Geraldines of Kildare, who threatened Dublin from their fortress at Maynooth. First introduction of a train of artillery into Ireland. 1535.
- 2 A commission of inquiry sent to Ireland. 1537. The power of the Crown acknowledged all through Ireland. 1542.
- 3 The attempt to civilize Ireland : *i.e.* to make it English in manners, in law, in tongue. The chiefs to accept an English title, and send one son to be educated in England.
- 4 Henry VIII., *King of Ireland* (instead of *Lord*).

c The Reformation.

- 1 Quiet acceptance of the Royal Supremacy and the dissolution of the Monasteries.
- 2 No desire for change in the ceremonies or doctrine of the Church. *The pressing of change unites all Ireland against the Crown.*

d Mary.

- 1 Disappearance of the Irish Protestantism called into being by Henry VIII.
- 2 Arbitrary political measures of the English Government ; the country of the O'Connors made into

the King and Queen's county, in honour of Mary and Philip. Feud between settlers and natives ; extermination of the natives.

e Elizabeth.

- 1 Return to the more conciliating policy of Henry VIII.
- 2 Alarm of the natives leads to the revolt of Shane O'Neill, elected by his sept as Earl of Tyrone. Defeat of the English at Armagh. Shane, master of the north, invades Connaught ; put down by the skill of Henry Sidney, the deputy. 1587.
- 3 Spanish attempts on Ireland. English sack the Spanish Fort of Smerwick and massacre the garrison. 1579.
- 4 Rising of the tribes of Ulster, under Hugh O'Neill. Futile resistance of Essex, 1599 ; the revolt suppressed by Lord Mountjoy (Charles Blount). 1601—1603.

f Continuance of Elizabeth's policy under James I.

- 1 The chiefs become landlords, the clansmen tenants. Everything Celtic rejected as barbarous. 1605—1608.
- 2 The colonization of Ulster. 1611. Two-thirds of Ulster confiscated to the Crown and divided between Irish, Scotch, and English settlers. Its material results brilliant : *its moral result to destroy all faith in English justice.*

J The Death of Elizabeth. Pp. 445, 446.

1. Insurrection of Essex, claiming to be a scheme to deliver the Queen from intriguers, and to settle the succession. 1601. Execution of Essex, Feb. 1601.
2. Gloom of the Queen's last years. No sympathy with the serious religious tone of the people. Solitary by nature and by the circumstances of her reign. Marriage forbidden her by religious and political necessity.
3. The Queen's mind gradually affected by melancholy. Death of the Queen, March 24, 1603.

James I. 1603—1625.

A Moral and Religious State of England. Pp. 447—461.

I. The Puritans. Pp. 447—454. *England becomes the people of a book, and that book the Bible.*

- a* Literary influence of the Bible (the only literature accessible to the bulk of the people) seen most in the colour it gives to ordinary speech. Pp. 447—449.

b Moral influence of the Bible seen in the type of men it produces, *serious, orderly, equable*. The nation becomes a church. Pp. 449, 450.

c The Puritan loss: disappearance of the wide sympathies, the brightness and variety of life, the sense of humour and delight of the Elizabethan age.

The Puritan gain: tenderness of home feelings, self-respect and self-control, the conception of social equality. *Puritanism the first system that recognises the grandeur of the people as a whole.*

d Puritanism as seen in Milton, Cromwell, and Bunyan, Pp. 451—454; 582—586, and 613—615.

John Milton.

a His earlier verse (L'Allégo, Il Penseroso, Comus, Arcades), shows the gaiety, poetic ease, intellectual culture of early Puritanism. So his education by his father, in Latin, Hebrew, Greek, Italian, French, English.

b His pamphlets and prose works show the political and social side of Puritanism: a struggle for *religious freedom, freedom of social life, freedom of the press.*

c The Paradise Lost the epic of Puritanism. Pp. 584, 585.

1 Its main idea—the resistance to human evil, and the striving for the attainment of a great purpose.

2 Its absence of mystery, “God the Father turns a school divine.”

3 Its self-control and self-repression, as in the expulsion of Adam from Eden.

Cromwell.

a Total separation between the godly and the world that lieth in wickedness; seen even in Milton's “reservedness of temper” and contempt for “the false estimates of the vulgar.” This explains behaviour such as Cromwell's after signing the death-warrant of the King.

b A sense of Divine Purity which makes the life of ordinary men appear sin. “Oh, I lived in and loved darkness, and hated light. I hated godliness” (Cromwell). This explains the shrinking of the Puritans from the amusements of other men.

Bunyan.

a Religious zeal heightened by an imaginative temper. Hence his despair owing to the pleasure he finds in hockey, dancing, and bell-ringing, until his conver-

sion, 1653, in spite of his services in Cromwell's godly army, and his marriage to a godly wife.

b 1653—1660. A preacher in the Baptist Church at Bedford. 1660—1671. Imprisoned by Charles II. in Bedford Gaol. Writes the *Pilgrim's Progress*, one of the noblest English *poems*.

- 1 Its pictures of ordinary life transformed and ennobled by the study of the Bible. *He lives in the Bible till its words become his own.*
- 2 Its freedom from bitter words, even in dark and evil days.
- 3 Its revelation of the poetry inspired even into the meanest by contact with the spiritual world.

II. The Presbyterians. Pp. 454—458.

1. *Thomas Cartwright* returns to England after the death of Mary with a fanatical enthusiasm for the Church of Geneva. *"Heretics ought to be put to death now. If this be bloody and extreme, I am content to be so counted with the Holy Ghost."*
2. Effect of the appearance of the Admonition to the Parliament. 1572.
 - a* Persecution by the Archbishops according to their personal opinions.
 - b* Vigorous action of the Ecclesiastical Commission in taking cognizance of all offences against the Statutes of Supremacy and Uniformity. 1583.
3. Cartwright opposed more rationally by Hooker, who in his Ecclesiastical Polity sets up *reason* against dogmatism. 1594.

III. The Separatists. Pp. 458—461.

1. Rapid growth of the belief that every established church—*i.e.* every church that has a Court like the Ecclesiastical Commission—is contrary to the Word of God. Rise of the Brownists.
2. Escape of "a poor people" from Scrooby in Nottinghamshire, after much difficulty, to Holland, 1608; thence, being wearied with a foreign land, in two ships, the "Speedwell" and the "Mayflower," (of which only the "Mayflower" makes the voyage) to America, 1620. Landing of the "Pilgrim Fathers" at New Plymouth, and foundation of New England.
3. Attack on the Bishops by "Martin Marprelate," in consequence of Whitgift's attempt to gag the press, 1588. General growth of discontent preparing the way for the great contest for liberty in the succeeding reigns.

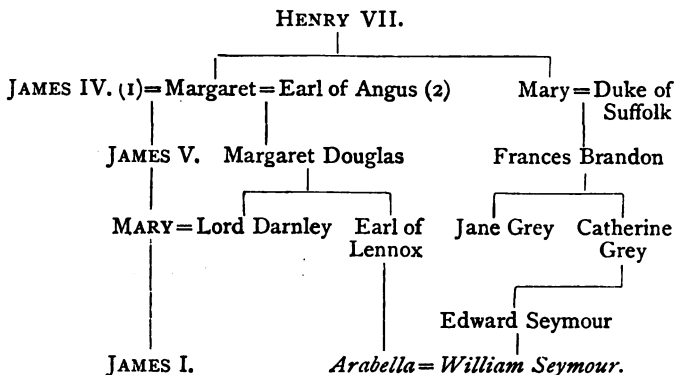
B The Catholic Reaction. Pp. 461—463.

1. *Controversies* and persecution among the Protestants.

2. Revival of religious zeal among the Roman Catholics.
 - a Rise of the Capuchins—the great preachers.
 - b Rise of the Order of Jesus under Ignatius Loyola—organizers, schoolmasters, missionaries, diplomats.
3. *Southern Germany* re-Catholicized, owing partly to the reviving religious zeal of the house of Austria. *Poland* lapsing into Socinianism. In the Netherlands, the Walloon provinces, Brabant and Flanders, re-Catholicized. In France, accession of Henry IV. and his acceptance of the Catholic Faith in the interests of the majority of his people. 1598.

C The Plots. Pp. 463, 464.

- I. The Plot to put Arabella Stuart on the throne by Raleigh, Lord Cobham, and others. 1603.
 - a Punishment of the conspirators.
 - 1 *Raleigh* imprisoned, 1603—1615; sent on an expedition to the Spanish Main, and on the failure of his expedition executed *on his old sentence*, 1618.
 - 2 Arabella imprisoned 1611 for marrying Seymour. *Dies insane*, 1615.
 - b Table showing the claim to the throne of Arabella and of her husband.



II. The Gunpowder Plot. 1605.

1. A plot to blow up King and Parliament, formed by English Roman Catholics aggrieved by persecution and hopeless of aid from abroad.
2. The plot discovered mainly by the foolish preaching of the Jesuits in Paris.
3. General alarm and *increased bitterness* against the Roman Catholics: this alarm shown even before the plot is dis-

covered by the Millenary Petition for the suppression of Popish Usages in the Prayer-book. 1603.

D The King's Political and Religious Views. Pp. 464—467.

1. *The divine right of Kings.* A King to be obeyed as the representative of God. "*An absolute monarchy, one in which the monarch is free from the control of law; not as to the Tudor statesmen, a realm complete in itself.*"
2. *The divine right of bishops.* "No bishop, no King." Reaction in James from the insults of the Scotch Presbyterians, who, like Andrew Melville, call him "God's silly vassal." Hence the King's conduct to the Puritans at the Hampton Court Conference. 1604. "I will make them conform, or I will harry them out of the land."
3. *A real desire to unite England and Scotland.* In this beyond his age.

E The King and his Parliament. Pp. 467—478.

1. Past relations of the Crown and the Parliament since the fall of Cromwell. Pp. 467—469.
 - a The reviving power of the Houses shown by the efforts of the Crown to pack Parliament by the recommendation of members and the creation of new boroughs. Thirty-two created under Edward VI.; fourteen under Mary.
 - b Attempts of Elizabeth to rule without Parliaments; a failure owing to the political necessities of her reign.
 - c Elizabeth obliged to yield to the interference of Parliament in the matter of monopolies.
2. James and the Parliament. Pp. 469—472.
 - a James concludes peace with Spain to free the Crown from its pecuniary dependence on Parliament; but is driven by his extravagance to ask Parliament for money immediately afterwards. 1604.
 - b The Parliament of 1604.
 - 1 Claim for redress of ecclesiastical grievances, and on refusal, solemn remonstrance with the King. "Let your Majesty be pleased to receive public information from your Commons in Parliament, as well as of the abuses in the Church as in the Civil State and Government."
 - 2 The King imposes Custom duties on merchandise imported or exported.
 - c The Parliament of 1610.
 - 1 Parliament forbidden to enter on the subject of taxation, with regard to the Custom duties; the forbiddal disregarded.
 - 2 Ecclesiastical matters claimed as within the cognizance of Parliament. Dissolution.

d The Parliament of 1614.

- 1 Rejection of the Court candidates all through England.
- 2 First appearance of John Pym (member for Somersetshire), Thomas Wentworth (member for Yorkshire), John Eliot (member for St. Germans).
- 3 Dissolution of Parliament owing to a quarrel on a point of privilege between the Commons (many of whom are new members) and the Lords.

3. *Growth of public resistance. 1614—1621. Pp. 472—476.*

Imprisonment of leading members of Commons.

a Refusal to pay the benevolences demanded by the King, especially in *Herefordshire* and *Staffordshire*.

b Alienation of the *gentry* by the King's expedients for raising money.

1 The straining of the feudal privileges of the Crown, *e.g.* wardship of heirs and marriage of heiresses.

2 The sale of peerages.

c Alienation of the *people*.

1 By the disgrace of Chief Justice Coke for resisting the King's claim to be consulted as to the decision of the Courts in cases of prerogative. **November, 1616.**

2 By the immorality of the Court.

3 By the unworthiness of the favourites who succeed Cecil.

(*a*) *Carr*, Earl of Rochester, who marries the divorced Lady Essex, and with her poisons *Sir Thomas Overbury*.

(*b*) George Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, beautiful, selfish, and reckless.

4 By the King's foreign policy.

(*a*) Maintenance of Elizabeth's foreign policy—*alliance with United Provinces and friendship with France*—during Cecil's life. Hence the marriage of James's daughter Elizabeth to the Elector Palatine as a support to the Protestant Princes of Germany against the House of Austria. **1612.**

(*b*) After the death of Cecil, pursuance of the King's own policy—the *Spanish policy*.

(1) Negotiations for a *Spanish marriage* for his son. **1615.**

(2) Attempt of the King's Protestant ministers to bring on a war with Spain. Hence the expedition of Raleigh, **1617, 1618.** Indignation of the people at Raleigh's execution, **1618.**

(3) Outbreak of the Thirty Years' War in Germany, 1618. The King relies on Spanish friendship; threatens war with Holland. Expulsion of his son-in-law, the Elector Palatine, Frederick, now King of Bohemia, from Bohemia, and occupation of the Palatinate by the Spaniards, 1621.

(4) The King compelled to call a Parliament.

4. The Parliament of 1621. Pp. 476—478.

a Enthusiasm of the Parliament for war for the recovery of the Palatinate;—the Commons "lifting their hats as high as they could hold them."

b Impeachment of Lord Bacon, as an attack on the corruption of the Court.

c The King, after threatening war with Spain, falls back on his old policy.

d Remonstrance of Parliament: "Set twal chairs, there are twal Kings coming." The King forbids Parliament to meddle with mysteries of State. Protest of the Commons; the King tears it out with his own hand, and dissolves Parliament. "*I will govern according to the Common weal, but not according to the Common will.*"

F The King's Last Years and Downfall of the Spanish Policy. 1621—1625. Pp. 479, 480.

1. Continued and fruitless efforts to bring about peace in Germany by his influence with Spain.

2. Final failure of the schemes for the Spanish marriage. "The King of Spain must never fight against the Emperor." Joy of the nation.

3. The Parliament of 1624. Impeachment of *Middlesex*, the head of the Spanish party; urged on by Buckingham. "You are making a rod for your own back." War resolved against Spain.

4. Marriage of Prince Charles to Henrietta Maria, daughter of Henry IV. of France. Death of the King, 1625.

Charles I. 1625—1649.

A The King and the Parliament. 1625—1629. Pp. 480—490.

1. The first differences. Pp. 481, 482.

a The King's toleration of the Catholics. Catholics suspected by the Parliament not as religiously wrong, but as *politically disloyal*.

b The King's refusal distinctly to state that the great fleet he is manning is against Spain.

- c* Limitation of the grant of tonnage and poundage to a year. Indignation of the King.
 - d* Parliament proceeds to consider grievances. Dissolution. 1626.
2. Eliot as the leader of the Country party. Pp. 482—484.
- a* Buckingham makes a descent on Cadiz. Failure and return of the Spanish expedition. 1625.
 - b* Exclusion of Wentworth, Coke, and four other leading patriots from the next Parliament, by making them sheriffs, and withholding of writs from the Earl of Bristol and the Bishop of Lincoln. 1626.
 - c* *Sir John Eliot*, member for St. Germans, ardent in temper, cool in intellect.
 - 1 Urges the responsibility of Royal Ministers to Parliament as the critical point for English freedom.
 - 2 Denounces and impeaches Buckingham for incompetence and corruption.
 - d* Dissolution of Parliament.
3. *Growth of public resistance. 1626—1628.* Pp. 484, 485.
- a* Refusal of *Middlesex, Kent, Bucks, and Cornwall* to pay the voluntary benevolence asked for by the King.
 - b* Attempt to levy a forced loan resisted by the northern counties, *Shropshire, Devon, and Warwickshire*. Imprisonment of Hampden, who "never afterwards did look like the same man he was before." 1627.
 - c* Attempt to quiet the popular discontent by a great military success. Buckingham, owing to a private quarrel, encourages the revolt of the Huguenots at La Rochelle. Utter defeat of the English under Buckingham in the Isle of Rhé, with a loss of *two thousand men, 1627*. Fall of La Rochelle, and ruin of the Huguenot cause in France.
4. The Parliament of 1628. Pp. 485—488.
- a* Rejection of the Court candidates, and triumphant return of the patriot leaders.
 - b* The Petition of Right, reciting the former Statutes against,
 - 1 Arbitrary taxation.
 - 2 Arbitrary imprisonment.
 - 3 Billeting of soldiers.
 - 4 Martial law.
 - "*Our Petition is for the laws of England.*"
 - c* The King returns an evasive answer, and forbids the Commons to cast aspersions on his Ministers.

d Increased bitterness of the Commons against Buckingham as "the author and source of all these miseries." *The King consents to the Petition of Right.*

e Assassination of Buckingham by John Felton. Popular joy; "*God bless thee, little David; the Lord comfort thee.*" 1628.

5. The King's attack on the National Religion. Pp. 488—490.

a Appointment of Laud as Bishop of London, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury. 1633. Aims of the High Churchmen,

1 To separate the Church of England from the Reformed Churches, and draw it closer to the Church of Rome.

2 Dependent on the Crown themselves to make the nation equally dependent. Preaching of passive obedience.

b Protest of the Parliament stopped by the King's command. The Speaker held down in his chair till the Commons pass the resolution that whosoever should bring in innovations in religion is a *capital enemy to the King and Commonwealth.* 1629.

c Dissolution of the Parliament.

B New England. Pp. 490—499.

1. Relations between England and America up to 1640.

a Voyages of the Cabots, Hudson, Frobisher, and Gilbert.

b Unsuccessful settlement of Virginia by Raleigh owing to the greed for gold and the hostility of the natives. 1584.

c First *permanent* settlement at Jamestown in Virginia under James Smith. 1606.

d Voyage of the Pilgrim Fathers in the "Mayflower"; settlement in Massachusetts. 1620. Charter granted. 1629.

e Settlement of Maryland (called after Henrietta Maria) by Lord Baltimore. A Roman Catholic colony *based on toleration.* 1634.

f The great Puritan emigration to New England, especially from the *eastern* counties. 1630—1640.

2. Progress of Laud's ecclesiastical policy in England the cause of this emigration.

a Enforcement of the use of the surplice and of ceremonies offensive to the Puritans.

b Suppression of the afternoon lectureships in towns—chiefly held by Puritans.

c Suppression of the Geneva pocket-Bibles.

- d* Issuing of the Royal declaration in favour of Sunday sports. 1633.
- e* Restoration of the Archbishop's palace at Lambeth, and issuing of a Royal injunction to remove the communion-table from the nave to the chancel of the church, and fence it in with a rail. 1635.
- f* Appointment of Juxon, Bishop of London, as Lord High Treasurer ; No Churchman in this office since Henry the Seventh's time." 1636.

C The Tyranny. 1629—1640. Pp. 499—518.

1. The suspension of Parliament for eleven years. Pp. 499—501.
 - a* Imprisonment of the leaders of the Country party. Death of Eliot in prison.
 - b* Attempts to dispense with the necessity of a Parliament by peace and economy.
 - 1 In the middle of the Protestant victories of Gustavus Adolphus, peace is made between England, France, and Spain. 1630.
 - 2 Money saved by the frugal labour of the King and the administration of Weston, Earl of Portland.
2. The King's rule, and attempts to fill his treasury. Pp. 501—503.
 - a* By illegal proclamations such as that prohibiting the extension of London, 1627 and 1630, and the fines imposed on the recusants.
 - b* By means of the Star Chamber : the Star Chamber revived by Wolsey as a check on the nobles as well as to make up for shortcomings of justice in the lower Courts ; now used to try ordinary cases in order to levy fines for the Crown.
 - c* By imposing heavy fines for trivial offences.
 - d* By demanding ship-money from the principal ports.
 - e* By means of monopolies.
3. Strafford (formerly Sir Thomas Wentworth). Pp. 503—507.
 - a* Thrown into opposition by jealousy of Buckingham. Supports the Petition of Right. *"If I do not faithfully insist for the common liberty of the subject to be preserved whole and entire, may I be set as a beacon on a hill for all men else to wonder at."*
 - b* After the death of Buckingham, admitted to the Royal Council and the King's chief adviser, though unpopular at Court and disliked by the Queen.
 - c* His policy in Ireland. 1633—1640. *"Everything for the people, nothing by the people."*
 - 1 Justice enforced, linen manufacture introduced, commerce developed.

- 2 His system of Absolutism carried out not in spite of Parliament *but by means of Parliament* (*cp.* the policy of Thomas Cromwell).
4. Scotland and the Stuarts from the flight of Mary Stuart. Pp. 507—510.
 - a The ruin of Catholicism in Scotland made complete by the horror excited by the massacre of S. Bartholomew. 1572.
 - b Establishment of Presbyterianism, oligarchical in theory, democratic in practice. Its national character shown most by the power of the Church over nobles and King. Hence the reaction of James I. of England.
 - c James reintroduces Prelates under the guise of permanent Moderators, 1610, but opposes Laud's more violent schemes; "*He knows not the stomach of that people.*"
 - d Charles allows Laud to have his way. Introduction of a Book of Canons and a new Liturgy. 1636.
5. Growth of the Resistance. Pp. 510—517.
 - a Protest of the less cultivated Puritans; *e.g.* *Prynne's* *Histrio-Mastix*, or attack upon the stage; *Bastwick's* *Elenchus Papismi* and new Litany; *Burton's* sermons calling on Christians to resist the Bishops as "limbs of the Beast and factors of Antichrist." All the three sentenced to be exposed in the pillory and imprisoned for life. 1633 and 1637.
 - b Protest of the more cultured Puritans equally against the Prelates and against the less cultured among themselves. Especially shown in Milton,
 - 1 Milton, originally designed for the Church of England, "Church-outed by the Prelates."
 - 2 Notwithstanding this, his earlier poems, *L'Allegro* and *Il Penseroso* unconsciously, and *Comus* (*a masque*) *consciously*, are to be considered as answers to the bigotry of the less cultured Puritans. 1633, 1634.
 - c Protest of Hampden against the payment of ship-money by the inland counties. November, 1637.
 - 1 The Tax formerly only levied *on sudden emergency, and confined to the coast.*
 - 2 Decision of the Judges against Hampden.
 - d Growing indignation of the more cultured Puritans shown in Milton's *Lycidas*. 1638.
 - e The Covenant.
 - 1 Riots in Edinburgh caused by the introduction of the new Liturgy. July, 1637.
 - 2 Formation of the Tables in Scotland. Negotiation between the Tables and the Crown, 1637, 1638.

3 The Tables sign the Covenant at Stirling (first sworn to in the days of Mary), "in the great name of the Lord our God," with tears on their cheeks; some underwriting their names with their own blood.

4 The Scots rise in arms under General Leslie, "the old crooked little soldier."

f Leslie marches from Dunse Law on the border; Charles driven to retreat before him. Pacification of Berwick and promise of a Parliament for Scotland. 1639. Meanwhile Strafford (Wentworth) raises troops for the King in Ireland.

6. The Short Parliament. 1640.

a The Parliament dissolved after three weeks sitting, in consequence of its firmness on the necessity of redress of grievances. "Things must go worse before they go better."

b Owing to the stress of the Scotch war, "*the Bishops' war*," Charles calls a Council of Peers at York.

c Finding the peers unwilling to assume the duties of a Parliament, he calls a second Parliament at Westminster. Nov. 13, 1640.

D The Long Parliament. 1640—1660. Pp. 518—530.

1. Pym ("King Pym"); "the embodiment of law." Pp. 518—520.

a Imprisoned at the end of the Parliament of 1614.

b One of the "twal Kings" who waited on James I. 1620.

c In the Long Parliament, member for Tavistock; rides through England before the elections to organize the Opposition.

d Pym the discoverer of the *doctrine of constitutional proportion. Parliament higher than the Crown; the Commons more essential than the Lords. The Commons may have "to save the kingdom alone."*

e Exposed by his wide range of sympathy and action to the scandal of narrower natures.

2. The early measures of the Parliament. Pp. 520—523.

a Abolition of the illegal courts, *Star Chamber, High Commission, Council of the North, of Lancaster, of Chester*, and others; illegality of ship-money declared.

b Passing of the Triennial Bill for the regular meeting of Parliament every three years at least.

c Imprisonment of Laud. Sorrow of his poor neighbours, who stand and pray for his safety and return to his house.

d Death of Strafford, "that grand apostate."

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 1 Strafford, forced by Charles to attend Parliament, determines to charge the leaders of the Commons with treasonable correspondence with the Scots. Anticipated by his own impeachment.
 - 2 Attempt of Charles to save Strafford by consenting to form a ministry of patriots under Lord Bedford. Frustrated by the death of Bedford and the discovery of the Army Plot—*i.e.* of the King's design to stir up the army to attack the Parliament.
 - 3 Progress of the impeachment. Weakness of technical proof of treason. Treason restricted by the Statute of Edward III. to (a) levying war against the King, (b) compassing the King's death, (c) succouring the King's enemies.
 - 4 St. John and Lord Falkland, in spite of Pym and Hampden, press for a Bill of *Attainder*, as the sole means of punishing a public enemy who falls within the scope of no written law.
 - 5 Condemnation and execution of Strafford. Joy of the people, "His head is off! His head is off!" May, 1641.
3. The Grand Remonstrance. Pp. 523—526.
- a Hyde and the "moderate men," in fear of the King's designs, bring in a Bill that the Parliament be not dissolved but by its own consent.
 - b Departure of the King for Edinburgh. Intrigues between the King and the Earl of Montrose.
 - c Insurrection in Ireland, due to the anarchy following on the fall of Strafford. Massacres of the Protestants by the Catholics, who style themselves "the King's army." October, 1641.
 - d Appearance of a new Royalist party in the Commons.
 - 1 Lord Falkland, learned and accomplished, a centre of liberal thought, but led by sentiment to fight against his convictions.
 - 2 Hyde.
 - 3 Loyal soldiers like Sir Edmund Verney; "I have eaten the King's bread, and served him thirty years, and I will not do so base a thing as to distrust him."
 - e Pym meets the dangers by an appeal to the nation in a solemn Remonstrance, recounting the work of the Parliament and claiming
 - 1 Observance of the laws against Papistry.
 - 2 Securities for administration of justice.
 - 3 Employment of ministers whom Parliament can trust.

The Remonstrance carried at midnight by a majority of eleven. *The first great crisis in the struggle between the King and the nation.* **November, 1641.**

4. Arrest of the Five Members. Pp. 526—528.

a Pym and Falkland demand in reference to the Church,

1 The severance of the clergy from State offices.

2 The expulsion of the Bishops from the House of Lords.

b This demand backed by the Presbyterians, the leading power among the middle classes, especially in *London* and the *Eastern Counties*.

c The demand resisted in the House of Lords. Excitement of the people. Withdrawal of ten Bishops from the House, and protest against all proceedings in their absence.

d Brawls in the streets between "Round Heads" and "Cavaliers." Refusal of the King to grant Parliament a guard. "On the honour of a King I will defend you from violence as completely as my own children."

e The King sends to arrest *Hampden, Pym, Hollis, Strode, Haslerig*, for treasonable correspondence with the Scots.

f On the refusal of the Commons to surrender them, the King goes in person to arrest them, **January 4, 1642.**

The Five Members take refuge in the City, and after four days return by river, guarded by the Trained Bands and the Watermen, "*sworn to guard the Parliament, the Kingdom, and the King.*"

5. Preparations for War. Pp. 529, 530.

a The King leaves London, and the Queen sails from Dover to Holland with the Crown jewels to raise munitions of war, but on the pretext of the marriage of her daughter Mary to William of Orange. **January 10, 1642.**

b The Earl of Newcastle raises troops for the King in the north.

c Pym secures for the Parliament, the Tower, and the Arsenals of *Portsmouth* and *Hull*. **January 12.** He appeals to the Lords not to force the Commons to save the kingdom *alone*.

d *Hull* refuses to open its gates to the King. **April, 1642.**

e *Falkland, Colepepper, Hyde*, with the new Royalist party, thirty-two Peers and sixty Commoners, leave Westminster to join the King. **May, 1642.**

... King

... King, demanding
... dismissing ministers.

... Royal children.

... civil, and religious

... *I should be no more
King.*

... August, 1646. (For the
... see "*King and Com-*

...

... at Nottingham

... and tempestuous

... the response from the

... for the Parliament).

... *Essex*; strengthened

... in *London*. *Essex*

... him, meets him at

... *Essex* victorious in the

... on the flanks by

... *York*, leaving the

... battle with the King.

3.

... gaining a hold over

... north for the King)

... Fairfax (commanding

... falls back on the

... *West Riding*. New-

... Queen's arrival with

... the *Trent*, threatening

... and orders *Essex* to

...

... Pp. 532, 533.

... his army out in a

... hence skirmishes,

... *Hampden* after a

... near *Chiselmaston*

... **June 18 and 24,**

... an attack on *Launceston*,

... *Greecil* (the grandson of

... the *Revenge*), **May, 1643;**

... and *Somerset*, defeat Sir

... *Launceston* Hill, near *Bath*, **July**

5; death of the Cornish leaders, Greenvil and Hopton. The Cornish *horse* defeat Waller a second time on *Roundway Down*, in Wiltshire (their *foot* being cooped up in *Devizes*). **July 13, 1643.**

c *Bristol surrenders to Prince Rupert.* **July 27.** The news falls on Parliament "*like a sentence of death.*"

3. The end of the Western Campaign and taking of the Covenant. Pp. 533, 534.

a The King master of the West. *Gloucester* alone between his western and northern armies. The King lays siege to Gloucester; obliged to raise the siege by the stout resistance of the "godly" citizens and the approach of Essex. **August 10—September 6, 1643.**

b Essex returns towards *London*, cut off by the King at *Newbury*. Indecisive battle and death of Lord Falkland. **September 20, 1643.**

c Pym's negotiations with Scotland to obtain aid, sanctioned by the English, mainly owing to the King's intrigues with the Irish rebels. The Covenant signed in Scotland and by the English Commons in S. Margaret's Church at Westminster. **September 25, 1643.**

d Death of Pym just before the hour of triumph. **December, 1643.**

4. Marston Moor and the Campaigns in Cornwall and Scotland. Pp. 534—536.

a Three Parliamentary armies sent into the field.

1 That of Essex, to watch the movements of the King at *Oxford*.

2 That of Waller, to oppose Prince Maurice in *Dorset* and *Devon*.

3 That of Manchester and Cromwell, to join Sir T. Fairfax and the Scots in *Yorkshire*.

b The King's Irish auxiliaries cut to pieces by Waller in the south, and by Fairfax in *Cheshire*. **January 25, 1644.**

c *Oxford* besieged by Essex and Waller, **April.** *York* besieged by Manchester and Fairfax.

d Prince Rupert relieves *York* and attacks Manchester, Fairfax and the Scots, on Marston Moor. Flight of the Scots; the battle won by Cromwell's Ironsides. A victory not only of the Parliament over the King, but also of the Independents over the Presbyterians. **July 1, 1644.**

e The King breaks out of *Oxford*, and taking advantage

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

of the absence of Essex, defeats Waller at *Cropledy bridge*, near Banbury. **June 29, 1644.**

f Essex marching into the West cut off and obliged to capitulate at *Fowey*, in Cornwall. (*The second defeat of the Presbyterians.*) **September 2, 1644.**

g Montrose defeats the Covenanters at *Tippermuir*, near Perth, occupies *Perth*, sacks *Aberdeen*. **September, 1644.**

h The King advancing from *the West* on *London* met by Essex, Manchester, and Cromwell at *Newbury*. Second battle of *Newbury* and defeat of the King. Disinclination of *Manchester* to make it a crowning victory. The King retires to Oxford. **October 27, 1644.**

5. Cromwell and the New Model, and Close of the War. Pp. 536—541.

a Cromwell's earlier life. After sitting in the Parliament of 1628, a farmer at S. Ives, in Huntingdonshire, a victim to religious melancholy encouraged by Puritanism. (See James I. A 1.)

b Cromwell a member of the Long Parliament. Advises Hampden to get as soldiers *men of religion*. Forms his regiment of "*Ironsides*," a "*lovely company*" of *men of religion*, with "*plain men*" as captains.

c Cromwell made tolerant by his *practical nature*; he takes good sober soldiers wherever he can find them.

d After Manchester's fatal delay at *Newbury*, Cromwell becomes a *political character*, pressing for a speedy termination of the war and a change of officers and military tactics.

e *The self-renouncing ordinance* removes the command of the army from Parliamentary leaders, and transfers it to Sir Thomas Fairfax, who reorganises the army. **April 3, 1654.** Results of the change:—

1 A mixture of *men of different ranks* among the officers.

2 A mixture of *religions* among the soldiers, preparing the way for absolute religious freedom.

3 The great *youth* of the officers, Fairfax himself only thirty-three.

f Negotiations carried on at *Uxbridge* during the winter between the King and the Parliament on the subjects of *religion*, the *militia*, *Ireland*; broken off by the King in consequence of Montrose's victory at *Inverlochy*, **February 2, 1645.**

g The King marches to join *Montrose*; storms *Leicester*,

and threatens the *Eastern Counties*; overtaken by Fairfax and Cromwell at *Naseby*, N.W. of *Northampton*. The King victorious on the right, and driving back the centre, routed by the *Ironsides* on the left, and attacked by them *on the flank*. Utter rout of the King's army, **June 14, 1645**. Fairfax conquers the *West* between **July 3 and July 30**. Prince Rupert surrenders *Bristol*, **September 10**. Final defeat of Montrose at *Philiphaugh*, in Selkirkshire, **September, 1645**.

- h* Publication of the Royal papers captured at Naseby, and consequent discovery of the King's intrigues.
- i* Defeat of the last Royalist troops under Sir Jacob Astley at *Stow*. **1646**. "You have done your work now, and may go to play, if you do not fall out among yourselves."

F The Army and the Parliament. 1646—1649.

1. Rise of the *Independents* as the representatives of *political progress and religious freedom*. Pp. 542—546.

- a* Meeting of divines at Westminster to draw up a Confession of Faith and to remodel the Church on a Presbyterian basis. **December, 1643**.

- b* Presbyterianism welcomed only in *London* and *Lancashire*. Growing demand for freedom of conscience, which the Presbyterians would not grant. "*New Presbyterian is but old priest writ large*."

- c* Growth of religious dissent in the army. Cromwell presses for toleration after Naseby and after the capture of Bristol. "From brethren in things of the mind *we look for no compulsion but that of light and reason*."

2. The Presbyterians and the King. Pp. 546, 547.

- a* Fairfax advances on *Oxford*, the King escapes, **April 26**, and takes refuge with the Scots, **May 5, 1646**.

- b* Proposals of the English Parliament to the King, pressed upon him by the Scots "with tears."

- 1 Parliamentary command of the army and fleet for twenty years.

- 2 The exclusion of "Malignants" (*i.e.* those who had fought for the King) from public offices.

- 3 The abolition of Episcopacy and establishment of a Presbyterian Church.

The King, to the joy of the Independents, who were anxious for *religious freedom*, rejects the proposals.

- c* The Scots surrender the King to a Committee of the Houses, receiving 400,000*l.* (one-half paid down at once) in discharge of their claims on the English Government. **February, 1647**.

d Parliament votes that the army be disbanded and a new Presbyterian army raised. **March.**

3. The Army and the Parliament. Pp. 547—549.

a Election by the army of a Council of Adjutors, two appointed by each regiment. **April, 1647.**

b The Adjutors carry off the King from the Parliamentary Commissioners at Holmby House. **June 4, 1647.**

c Refusal of the army to disband till they have finished the work God has given them to do. **June 10, 1647.**

1 Religious freedom and liberty of conscience.

2 Political and social reform. "On becoming soldiers we have not ceased to be citizens."

d "Humble Representation" of the Army to the Parliament, demanding

1 *Toleration*, not revolution, ecclesiastical or political.

2 The expulsion of *Hollis* and ten other Members as a means of bringing about this settlement. The army march to Uxbridge, and the Parliament give way. **June 25, 1647.**

4. The Army and the King. Pp. 549—551.

a Ireton proposes an *Act of Settlement* to the King.

1 A general Act of Oblivion for all but seven leading delinquents.

2 Parliamentary control of the army and fleet for ten years.

3 Parliamentary nomination of great Officers of State.

4 *Freedom of belief and worship even to Papists.*

5 Triennial Parliaments and *reform of representation, taxation, legal procedure, and commerce.*

b The King attempts "to play his own game," and to balance the Army against the Parliament.

c Agitation in London in favour of negotiations with the King and return of the Eleven Members: fourteen Peers and a hundred Commons escape from London to the Army, and are by it restored. **August 6, 1647.**

d Demands of the Army—

1 Abolition of the House of Peers.

2 Election of a new House of Commons.

Resisted by Ireton and Cromwell, who still hope for the King's consent to the Act of Settlement.

e The King attempts to bring about an invasion of England by the Scots in his favour, and escapes

from Hampton Court. Dismay of Cromwell : "*The King is so great a dissembler and so false a man that he cannot be trusted.*" **November 12, 1647.**

5. The Second Civil War. **February, 1648.** Pp. 551—553.
 - a The King escapes to the Isle of Wight, but finds himself once more a prisoner. **November 14, 1647.**
 - b The King signs a secret treaty with the Scots for the invasion of England. **December, 1647.** Depression of Argyle and the Liberal party in Scotland, and ascendancy of Hamilton and the reactionary party.
 - c Outbreak of a Royalist revolt in England—in *S. Wales, Essex, Kent, Hertford, and in the fleet.* **February—May, 1648.**
 - d The Parliament *strengthen the revolt* by the "Ordinance for the Suppression of Blasphemies and Heresies," *crushing all hopes of religious freedom.*
 - e Resolution of the Army to "call Charles Stuart, that man of blood, to account, if the Lord bring us back in peace."
 - f Suppression of the revolt.
 - 1 Defeat of the insurgents in *Kent* by Fairfax, in *Wales* by Cromwell. **June—July, 1648.**
 - 2 The Scotch reactionists crushed at *Warrington* by Cromwell, in *Scotland* by the rising of the Covenanters in the "*Whiggamore Raid.*" **August, 1648.**
6. The King's Death. Pp. 553, 554.
 - a The Army press for "justice on the King"; demanding also
 - 1 Election of a new Parliament,
 - 2 Electoral reform. Redistribution of seats, and election of four hundred members by all householders rateable to the poor.
 - 3 Supremacy of Parliament *in all things.*
 - 4 Change of kingship into a magistracy elected by Parliament.
 - b The Parliament reply by opening fresh negotiations with the King.
 - c The Army seize the King, and convey him to Hurst Castle. **November 30.** Fairfax advances on London. *Pride's Purge*—*i.e.* exclusion by force from the House of Commons of those who were on the side of the King, not on the side of the people. **December 6, 1648.**

"*Let us not glorify revolutions.*"

d Nomination by the Commons of a High Court of Justice, under the presidency of *John Bradshaw*, to try the King. Rejection of the Court by the Peers, and consequent abolition of the House of Lords. "*The people are—under God—the original of all just power, and the Commons—being chosen by, and representing, the people—have the supreme power in this realm.*"

e Trial and condemnation of the King "as a tyrant, traitor, murderer, and enemy of his country."

Execution of the King at Whitehall:

"He nothing common did, or mean,
Upon that memorable scene."

January 30, 1649.

The Commonwealth. 1649—1660.

A The Early Years of the Commonwealth. 1649—1653.

1. The Council of State. Pp. 555, 556.

a Creation of a Council of State of forty-one Members selected from the Commons with full executive powers at home and abroad, **March, 1649**; and proclamation of England as a *Commonwealth or Free State without King or House of Lords*, **May 19, 1649**.

b Effect of the King's execution,

1 On Europe. Open hostility shown to the Commonwealth by *Russia, France, Holland*.

2 At home. Charles II. proclaimed King in *Scotland*, and invited to land in *Ireland*.

2. The Rump and the Army. Pp. 556, 557.

a Publication of the "Eikôn Basilikê" by Dr. Gauden, supposed to be the King's writing during his captivity. Growing discontent among the people increased by the execution of the Duke of Hamilton and Lords Holland and Capell, **March 9**; protest of John Lilburne, **Oct. 28**.

b Refusal by the majority of the Council of State of the oath pledging them to the execution of the King, and establishment of the Commonwealth.

c Mutiny in the army caused by the delay of the Parliament in dissolving and adopting the reforms demanded by the Army. Crushed by Fairfax and Cromwell

3. The Conquest of Ireland. Pp. 557—559.

a Two apologies for Cromwell's severity in Ireland.

1 Whatever was done, had to be done quickly.

- 2 The Catholic atrocities had roused a spirit of vengeance: (*cp.* the feeling in England, after the Indian mutiny), *and yet no man, not in arms, was massacred, destroyed, or burnt by Cromwell's soldiers.*
 - b* Cromwell storms *Drogheda*; three thousand men massacred, besides those burnt in the steeple of S. Peter's Church: the soldiers, taken prisoners, shipped as slaves to the Barbadoes. **September 12, 1649.**
 - c* Cromwell besieges *Wexford*; massacre of Wexford. **Oct. 9.**
 - d* Prince Rupert's fleet driven from Ireland to the Tagus by Blake. **March, 1650.** *The navy entirely reconstructed by the energy of Sir Harry Vane.*
 - e* Cromwell storms *Clonmel* and defeats the Irish under Hugh O'Neill; leaves Ireland to oppose Prince Charles, who is expected to land in Scotland. **March, 1650.**
4. The Scotch Campaign. Pp. 559—561.
 - a* Cromwell invades Scotland. **July, 1650.** Leslie cuts off the retreat of the English by seizing *Cockburn's path*, near *Dunbar*.
 - b* To gratify the preachers, Leslie leaves his position; total defeat of the Scots in less than an hour, **September 3, 1650.**
 - c* Effects of the Battle of Dunbar,
 - 1 On Europe. *Holland* and *Spain* recognise the Commonwealth.
 - 2 On Scotland. Power transferred from Argyle to Hamilton and the Royalists. Charles II. freed from the demands of the Covenanters; crowned King at Scone. **January 1, 1651.**
 - d* The Scotch Royalist army invade England; overtaken and attacked by Cromwell at *Worcester*; "*as stiff a contest as ever I have seen.*" *The Crowning Mercy.* **September 3, 1651.**
5. The Dutch War and the Parliament. 1651—1653. Pp. 561—564.
 - a* The Rump stimulated into activity by *Vane* to prevent its dissolution. Reform of the *Law* undertaken; *union with Scotland* passed both in Scotland and England; union with *Ireland* proposed.
 - b* Reconstruction of the navy by *Vane*. Passing of the "Navigation Act," which, interfering with the Dutch carrying trade, and only allowing importation in the ships of the import-producing country, brings about a Dutch war. **1652.**

- c* The Army press for a new Representative. Their petition refused. **August 13, 1652.**
- d* Three battles between the Dutch and the English, ending in the victory of the English. **September 28, November 28, 1652, and February 18—21, 1653.** Parliament, relying on the navy, determines to retain its power. 1653.
- e* Cromwell dissolves the Parliament by force. "*You mistake, Sir, if you think the Parliament dissolved. No power on earth can dissolve the Parliament but itself, be sure of that!*" **April 19, 1653.**

B The Fall of Puritanism. 1653—1660. Pp. 564—586.

1. The Puritan Convention (Barebones Parliament). **July 4, 1653. Pp. 564—568.**
 - a* Nomination of new Council of State of eight officers and four civilians (*Vane* being offered a seat).
 - b* Summoning of a Constituent Assembly of "men of our own judgment, faithful, fearing God, and hating covetousness, who had fought in the wars—*why, surely these men will hit it.*" **July 4, 1653.**
 - c* Work of the Convention—
 - 1 As a *Constituent Assembly*; *The Instrument of Government.*
 - (*a*) Preparations for a *National Parliament.*
 - (1) Parliament to consist of four hundred English, thirty Scotch, and thirty Irish Members.
 - (2) Transference of seats from rotten boroughs to larger constituencies and to counties.
 - (3) General right of suffrage, based on property to the value of 200*l.*, to all except Catholics and Malignants.
 - (*b*) Establishment of the Protectorate. The power of the Protector limited—
 - (1) By the *administrative check of a Council.*—The Council nominated but not removable by the Protector, to be consulted in all foreign matters, to give their consent to peace or war, appointment of great officers, disposal of military power.
 - (2) By the *political check of Parliament.*—Parliament to be held at least every three years, to impose taxes, make laws, even without the assent of the Protector, who can only delay them twenty days.
 - 2 As a reforming body (*beyond its legal powers*).
 - (*a*) Proposed abolition of the Court of Chancery.
 - (*b*) Establishment of civil marriage.

(c) Abolition of compulsory tithes and lay-patronage.

(d) Committee to consider necessary reforms.

d Alarm of the classes attacked—*e.g. lawyers, clergy, landed proprietors*—shared by Cromwell, who is in temper eminently practical and conservative. "Nothing was in the hearts of these men but *overturn, overturn.*"

e Dissensions in the Convention. Resignation of its powers to Cromwell. December 13, 1653.

2. The Parliament of 1654. September 4. Pp. 568—570.

a The first *National* Parliament of English, Scotch, and Irish members.

b A "*Free Parliament*" (Malignants and a few ultra-Republicans alone excluded).

c Consideration and passing of the Instrument of Government.

1 Interference of Cromwell, as being already called to the Protectorate by the voice of the nation. September 12.

2 Growing impatience of Cromwell with the Parliament.

His own work in the interval between the Convention and the Parliament.

(a) Peace with *Holland*. April 5.

(b) Regulation of the *Law* and the *Church*.

(c) Completion of the Union with *Scotland*. April 12.

He looks to Parliament to complete his work, "*to heal and to settle.*"

(a) By making peace with *Portugal* and an alliance with *Spain*.

(b) By codifying the *Law*.

(c) By settling and planting *Ireland*.

d The Parliament continue to busy themselves with *Constitutional questions*. Signs of movement among the Royalists. *Cromwell dissolves the Parliament; his act fatal to liberty and to Puritanism.* January, 1655.

3. The New Tyranny: end of all appearance of legal rule. Pp. 570, 571.

a Cromwell levies taxes in his own name. "*The people will prefer their real security to forms.*"

b The Royalist revolt in *Devon*, *Dorset*, *Welsh Marches*. **March.**

- c* Suppression of revolt, and division of the country into *ten military districts, each under a Major-general*.
- d* *Censorship* of the Press (**October**), and persecution of Episcopalian ministers (forbidden to act as ministers or tutors).
- 4. The Protector's Policy in Scotland and Ireland. Pp. 571—573.
 - a* In Scotland.
 - 1 The Highlands reduced to tranquillity by General Monk. **April—July, 1654.**
 - 2 Suppression of the General Assembly, **July, 1654**, and protection of religious freedom.
 - b* In Ireland.
 - 1 Completion of the Conquest of Ireland by Ireton and Ludlow. **1650—1652 and 1652—1654.** Transportation of prisoners to forced labour in Jamaica and West Indies.
 - 2 *Settlement* of Ireland by Henry Cromwell. **1654—1659.**
 - (*a*) All who have taken part in the massacres sentenced to banishment or death.
 - (*b*) Catholic proprietors who have borne arms deprived of their estates and settled in Connaught.
 - (*c*) Catholic proprietors of suspected loyalty deprived of a third-part of their estates.
 - (*d*) Completion of the Legislative Union between Ireland and England. **1654.**
 - c* General effect of the settlement. The native population utterly crushed; but peace and order restored, and commerce encouraged by the Protestant immigration.
- 5. The Protector's Policy in England: "healing and settling." P. 573.
 - a* Reform of the Court of Chancery.
 - b* Institution of a Board of Triers to check the abuses of lay-patronage.
 - c* Absolute religious toleration. Even the *Quaker* openly, and the *Jew* tacitly, tolerated. **December, 1655.**
- 6. The Protector's Policy in Europe. Pp. 573—576.
 - a* Rise of *France* to be the dominant power of Europe, owing to its compact territory, its internal peace, and the centralizing rule of Henry IV., Richelieu, and Mazarin. **1589—1643.**
 - b* Cromwell's desire to make England head of the Protestant cause in Europe against *Spain*, which is still to him "head of the Papal interest."

- 1 Peace with Holland, to unite the Protestant countries; and abandonment by Cromwell of the plan of the Long Parliament to make a *political union* of Holland and England. **1654.**
- 2 Massacre of the Vaudois by the Duke of Savoy, Charles Emmanuel II.; interference of England. **1656.**
- 3 Destruction by England of the piratical fleet of Algiers; capture of *Jamaica*, **May, 1655**; destruction of the Plata fleet at *Santa Cruz* in the *Canaries*, and death of Blake. **April 20, 1657.**
- 4 Cromwell, blind to the dangers to be feared from *France*, joins *France against Spain*, in attacking Flanders. Conquest of Flanders by the French and English occupation of Dunkirk. **June, 1658.**

The great result of Cromwell's foreign policy is to increase the aggrandisement and aid the ambition of France.

7. The Parliament of 1656. Pp. 576—579.

a Desire of Cromwell to give his tyranny a legal basis; summoning of a Parliament, but *no longer of a free Parliament*. **September 17, 1656.**

- 1 The Scotch and Irish members *nominees of the Government*.
- 2 Malignants and Catholics still disqualified from voting.
- 3 Half the members of the House placemen.
- 4 *Each member returned to be approved by the Council; a hundred excluded for disaffection or want of religion.*

b Work of the Parliament,

- 1 The support of the Protector in his *foreign* policy.
- 2 The opposition of the Protector in his *home* policy.

(a) By insisting on the withdrawal of the powers of the Major-generals.

(b) By offering to Cromwell the title of King—a *title limited by constitutional precedents*—instead of that of Protector—a title unknown to and unlimited by the law. Refusal of the crown by Cromwell *owing to the temper of the Army*. **March—May, 1657.**

c Parliamentary sanction to the Act of Government, and inauguration of the Protector. **June 26.**

- 1 A practical acknowledgment of the illegality of his former rule.
- 2 Restoration of the House of Lords.
- 3 Taxes only to be levied by consent of Parliament.

- 4 *Liberty of worship* secured for all but Papists, Prelatists, and Socinians, and *liberty of conscience* for all.
8. Death of Cromwell. Pp. 579, 580.
- a Dissolution of Parliament, owing to Cromwell's impatience of the strife between the two Houses. **February 4, 1658.**
- b "*I would be willing to live, but my work is done! Yet God will be with His people.*" **September 3, 1658.**
9. The Fall of Puritanism. Pp. 580—582.
- a General submission to the new Protector, Richard Cromwell.
- b Parliament summoned on the old system of election. *The first step in reaction.* **January 29, 1659.**
- c The Army still strong enough to obtain a dissolution of Parliament. **April 22, 1659.**
- d Recall of the remnants of the Long Parliament by the Army, in the hopes of procuring a settled Government. **May 7.**
- e Jealousy between the Rump and the Army, and quarrels and division in the Army itself.
- f The Rump driven out by the Army. **October 23, 1659.** Meanwhile, Monk advances from Scotland with offers of a "Free Parliament." Enters London unopposed. **February 3, 1660.**
- g Meeting of a new House of Commons styled the Convention, and bound by subscription of the Solemn League and Covenant. **April 25, 1660.**
- h The Declaration of Breda, promising pardon, religious toleration, and satisfaction to the Army. *Restoration of Charles II.,* **May 29, 1660.**
10. Milton. Pp. 582—586.
- a During the Civil War in strife with the Royalists and Presbyterians for
- 1 Religious freedom.
 - 2 Freedom of social life.
 - 3 Freedom of the Press.
- b During the Protectorate, Latin, *i.e.* foreign, secretary to Cromwell: publishes "the Eikonoklastes in answer to the Eikôn Basilikê," **October, 1649;** "The Defence of the English People," **April, 1651.**
- c After the Restoration lives in poverty and blindness; appearance of Milton's great poem "The Paradise Lost," the epic of Fallen Puritanism. **1667.**

- 1 Its name, *Paradise Lost*.
 - 2 Its main idea the resistance to human evil, and the striving for justice and law.
 - 3 Its self-control and self-repression as in the expulsion of Adam from Eden.
 - 4 Its absence of mystery, "God the Father turns a school divine."
11. The Victory of Puritanism. P. 586.
- Its silent effects on the characters of Englishmen appearing
- a* politically, in the Revolution of 1688;
 - b* religiously, in the Wesleyan revival;
 - c* morally, in the increasing purity of English literature and honesty of English politics.

Charles II. 1660—1685.

A England between the Fall of Puritanism and the Revolution. Pp. 587—604.

1. The Reaction from Puritanism. Pp. 587—591.
 - a* Confined in its most violent forms to the Capital and the Court.
 - b* As far as it affects the nation, not sudden, but gradual; produced by the despotism of the real and the hypocrisy of the false Puritans.
2. Rise of a modern England.
 - a* Beginnings of English science; science takes the place of theology as the chief subject of interest. Pp. 591—599.
 - 1 Lord Bacon, whose influence is now for the first time felt.
 - (*a*) Bacon's Life. Pp. 591—594.
 - (1) At twenty-three a member of the House of Commons. "The fear of every man that heard him was lest he should make an end."
 - (2) Fails to obtain political employment; partly because Elizabeth sees his moral weakness, partly from the grandeur of his political views:—
 - (*a*) Codification of the law.
 - (*b*) Civilization of Ireland.
 - (*c*) Eventual union of England and Scotland.
 - (*d*) Reforms in the Church, education, and the like.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- (3) Patronized by Lord Essex; *supports the charge of treason against Essex at his trial.* 1601.
 - (4) First obtains Court favour under James. Finally Lord Keeper and Lord Chancellor, after the disgrace of Coke, *during the most disgraceful years of James's reign.* 1617—1620.
 - (5) Impeachment of Bacon for corruption. He confesses his guilt: "I beseech your Lordships to be merciful to a broken reed." 1621.
- (b) Bacon's science. Pp. 594—597.
- (1) Its weakness. Want of reverence for the past, and excess of dogmatism blinding him to the scientific discoveries of his own day—such as the Copernican Theory and the discoveries in terrestrial magnetism, by Dr. Gilbert of Colchester. 1591.
 - (2) Its strength.
 - (a) Experimental analysis the key of science, as in his Essays the key of morals.
 - (b) The unity of knowledge and of inquiry.
 - (c) Confession of the liability of the inquirer to go astray, owing to the *idols* (*vain shows*) of the *Tribe* (*i.e.* the spirit of *system* that pervades all masses of men), of the *Den* (*i.e.* *individual* peculiarities), of the *Forum* (*i.e.* the power of *words* over the mind), of the *Theatre* (*i.e.* the traditions of the *past*).
 - (d) The belief in the future of mankind and of science.
 - (c) Bacon's attitude to Theology; Theology to him outside the province of reason: "If I proceed to treat of it, I shall step out of the bark of human reason, and enter into the ship of the Church."
- 2 The Royal Society. Pp. 597, 598.
- (a) Meeting of a little group of students in *London*, "inquisitive into natural philosophy," partly no doubt from political apathy or despair, 1645. Afterwards in London and Oxford.
 - (b) The *London* Society broken up by the troubles of the second Protectorate.
 - (c) The Society revived at the Restoration, pat-

ronized by the King, and called the "Royal Society." 1662.

- 3 Popularity of science, and increase of scientific discovery. P. 599.

(a) *The National Observatory at Greenwich*; observations of *Flamsteed*, and investigation of the tides, of terrestrial magnetism, of comets, by *Halley*.

(b) *Practical Chemistry* founded by *Boyle*, *philology* by *Wilkins*, *mineralogy* by *Woodward*, *zoology* by *Ray*, *botany* by *Ray* and *Morrison*, *vegetable physiology* by *Grow*, improvement of the microscope by *Hooke*.

(c) *Isaac Newton*, the author of the theory of planetary fluxions, and the discoverer of the law of gravitation. The Theory of Fluxions, published 1665, the Theory of Light, 1671, the Principia, 1685.

- b Change in English Theology. Pp. 599—602.

1 *Lord Falkland* the beginner of a new era in English Theology by denying the authority of tradition in matters of faith.

2 *Chillingworth* grounds the "Religion of Protestants" on the Bible as interpreted by the common reason of men.

3 *Jeremy Taylor*. The Liberty of Prophesying, published 1647.

(a) Condemns Protestant *dogmatism* as much as Catholic infallibility. Asks for only one standard of faith—the Apostles' Creed, and pleads for the union of Christian Churches by the simplification of formularies.

(b) Pleads for toleration—even for the Papist and the Anabaptist.

4 (a) Compare these Latitudinarians—*Chillingworth*, *Taylor*, *Burnet*, *Tillotson*, *Butler*, with the advocates of the New Learning—*Colet*, *Erasmus*, *More* (see *Henry VII. D*, and *Henry VIII. C*).

(b) Compare the Latitudinarian plea for toleration—the imperfections of human reason—with the Puritan plea—the personal communion of each soul with God.

- c Impulse of political and social inquiry by *Hobbes* in his "*de Cive*" and "*Leviathan*." 1651.

1 Men originally equal and in a state of war.

2 All human relations grounded on prudent selfishness.

Friendship, a sense of social utility; Religion, the fear of invisible powers.

- 3 That great Leviathan, the State, created by a *covenant* between man and man, to secure greater strength.

(a) *All rights resigned by the individual to the State and its representative.*

(b) Education of prince and people the *only* check on tyranny; the end of the Government being the good of the Commonwealth.

d Hobbes' doctrines enlarged and modified by *Locke*, the basis of the *revolutionary political philosophy*. 1689—1690.

- 1 All power derived from the people.
- 2 All power to be exercised for the good of the people, and all rulers responsible to the people.
- 3 Right of the people to withdraw power from the unworthy holder. (These last not found in Hobbes.)

B The First Years of the Restored Monarchy. 1660—1667. Pp. 604—616.

1. The First Ministry and Convention. 1660. Pp. 605—608.

a The King's first ministry a compromise—of Royalists such as Hyde and Ormond, and Presbyterians who had brought about the Restoration, such as Monk and Ashley Cooper.

b Passing of the Bill of Indemnity.

- 1 Only seven regicides originally excluded from pardon: finally ten of the King's judges executed after trial, and Vane and Lambert, though not regicides, exempted from the general pardon.
- 2 Compensation claimed by the Royalists for losses owing to forced sales of their lands, refused. Indignation of Royalists: "*A Bill of Indemnity for the King's enemies and oblivion for his friends.*"
- 3 The constitutional work of the Long Parliament accepted as the base of future government. No attempt made to revive *illegal courts, or monopolies, or ship-money, or taxation without consent of Parliament*; but the union of Scotland and Ireland with England undone.
- 4 Abolition of feudal privileges of the Crown—wardship, marriage of heiresses, and feudal aids—in exchange for an annual grant of 100,000*l.* to the King.
- 5 Proposed reconstitution of the Church. Bishops to be Presidents of Boards of Presbyters; the

Liturgy to be adopted with the omission of "superstitious practices." Rejected by the influence of Hyde.

6 *Cromwell, Ireton, Bradshaw, disinterred and hung in gibbets, January 30, 1661, the bodies of Pym and Blake expelled from Westminster Abbey.*

2. The Cavalier Parliament. 1661—1681. Pp. 608—611.

a Prosecution and execution of Vane, in spite of the King's pledge to save his life. January 14, 1662.

b Religious zeal of the Parliament.

1 Burning of the Solemn League and Covenant by the common hangman.

2 Passing of the *Corporation Act*; all municipal officers

(*a*) To receive the Communion according to the Anglican use.

(*b*) To renounce the Covenant.

(*c*) To take an oath of non-resistance.

An attempt to drive the Presbyterians out of the boroughs, their greatest strongholds.

3 Renewal of the Act of Uniformity. 1662.

(*a*) The use of the Prayer-book enforced in public worship.

(*b*) Unfeigned consent and assent demanded from all ministers to all contained in it.

(*c*) All but episcopal orders legally disallowed (for the first time since the Reformation).

4 Driving out of *two thousand* rectors and vicars (one-fifth of the clergy of the Church) as Non-conformists. *S. Bartholomew's day, August 24, 1662.* Effects of the expulsion.

(*a*) Severance of the Church of England from the other Reformed Churches, and consequent immobility.

(*b*) Appearance of *Dissent* as a religious and political power, leading finally to absolute religious freedom.

3. Religious Persecution. Pp. 611—615.

a The King proposes a Bill to enable him to dispense with the Act of Uniformity—really to favour the Roman Catholics. 1663.

The Nonconformists object to its unconstitutional character, the Church to its liberal tendency.

b Parliament replies by insisting on the banishment of

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

Roman Catholic priests, and by passing the *Conventicle Act*, 1664, and the *Five Mile Act*, 1665.

The Conventicle Act, forbidding meetings of more than five persons for any religious worship but that of the Common Prayer.

The Five Mile Act, forbidding any Nonconformist minister who declines the oath of non-resistance to come within five miles of a borough or town. As most of the Nonconformists lived in towns, this meant expulsion of their ministers and loss of all religious teaching.

c A special Act against Quakers, 1662; in 1672 twelve thousand Quakers are in prison.

d Bunyan an illustration of the severity of the persecution.

1 After his conversion—1653—a preacher in the Baptist church at Bedford.

2 Imprisoned at the Restoration from 1660 to 1672.

3 Writes while in prison the first part of the *Pilgrim's Progress* and other treatises and meditations. The first part of the *Pilgrim's Progress* published 1674, the second part 1678, the *Holy War* 1682.

The *Pilgrim's Progress* one of the noblest English poems,

(a) *In its sunny kindliness unbroken by a word of bitterness.*

(b) In its revelation of the poetry created by contact with the spiritual world; *ordinary* life transformed and glorified by the Bible atmosphere. Hence the most widely known of English books.

4. War with Holland. Pp. 615, 616.

a Quarrel between Dutch and English merchants as to the monopoly of *gold-dust and slaves* from the Guinea Coast. 1664. War declared against the Dutch, February, 1665.

b English victory off *Lowestoft*, June 3, 1665. Doubtful battle in the Downs, June 1—4, 1666. English victory and ravaging of the coast of Holland, July 25, 1666. Obstinacy of the struggle. "They may be killed, but they cannot be conquered."

c English victory counterbalanced by disasters at home.

1 The Plague of London carrying off a hundred thousand in the course of the year. 1665.

2 The Fire of London, destroying *all the city from*

the Tower to the Temple. September 2—6, 1666.

d The Dutch, taking advantage of this, sail up to Gravesend, burn the men-of-war in the Medway, and are masters of the Channel from June 9 to July 21, 1667.

C The King and his Policy. 1667—1673. Pp. 616—628.

1. The King's Character and Policy. Pp. 616—619.

a His character : Incapable of love or hate, only retaining for his fellow-men a feeling of amused contempt.

b His policy : To rule as independently as he could without having to set out on his travels again.

2. The carrying out of his policy in the earlier years of his reign. Pp. 616—622.

a Undoing of the Union with Scotland. 1660. P. 619.

1 Meeting of the "Drunken Parliament," January 1, 1661, and annulling of all proceedings of Parliament during the last eight-and-twenty years.

2 Abolition of the Covenant and re-establishment of Episcopacy. December 15.

3 Execution of the Earl of Argyle, May 27.

4 Government of Scotland entrusted to Lauderdale, who devotes himself to crushing Presbyterianism, and raising a Royal army.

b Undoing of the Union with Ireland. 1660. P. 620.

1 Restoration of the Bishops to their sees.

2 The land still remains in the hands of Cromwell's settlers.

c Attempts to raise a Royal army in England. P. 620.

1 Five thousand horse and foot retained as the King's guards, after the rising of the Anabaptists under Venner. January, 1661.

2 These guards gradually increased till, at the end of the reign, they consist of seven thousand foot, one thousand seven hundred horse, and six King's regiments serving in the employ of the United Provinces.

d Attempts to gain freedom from Parliamentary control by the aid of France.

1 The King consents not to interfere with the policy of Lewis XIV. (i.e. the annexation of the Spanish Netherlands, which he claims in right of his wife Maria Theresa).

2 The King marries Catharine of Portugal (just

- revolted from Spain and dependent on France), in spite of Spanish remonstrance. 1662.
- 3 The King sells Dunkirk, *the one result of Cromwell's victories*, to France. National irritation: "We all naturally love the Spanish, and hate the French."
 - 4 Lewis obliged to support Holland in its war with England, **January, 1666**. Desire in England for war with France; serious hostilities avoided by the dexterity of Charles and Lewis.
 - 5 The national irritation calmed by the sacrifice of Clarendon (Hyde), who is unpopular—*with the nation* from his pride and corruption; *with the Parliament* from the disgraces of the Dutch war. **August to November, 1667.**
 3. Ashley (Shaftesbury) succeeds Clarendon, heading the "Cabal" Ministry, and practically *thwarts the King's schemes*. Pp. 623, 624.
 - a By pressing first for a scheme of *Protestant comprehension*, and *union* of Protestant Churches: then for toleration, at least, *for all but Roman Catholics*.
 - b By pressing for a league of Protestant Powers, after the French occupation of Flanders, in 1667. Sir William Temple negotiates the *Triple Alliance* between *England, Holland, and Sweden*, forcing Lewis to the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1668. Irritation of Lewis at being foiled by "*a nation of shopkeepers*," and rise of English reputation on the Continent. National exultation "*The only good public thing that has been done since the King came to England*."
 4. The King enters into a secret alliance with France. *The Treaty of Dover*, negotiated by Arlington, *the author of the Triple Alliance*, **May 22, 1670**. P. 624.
 - a The King to announce his conversion to Roman Catholicism (afterwards deferred).
 - b To join the French in declaring war in Holland.
 - c To support the French claim on Flanders, in event of the King of Spain dying without an heir.
 5. The Dutch War. Pp. 625, 626.
 - a Ashley induced to consent to the war, by a *Declaration of Indulgence to all but Roman Catholics*, **March, 1672**. Twelve thousand Quakers liberated from gaol.
 - b Money obtained for the war by *closing the Exchequer*, and the suspension of payment of interest or principal on the loans of the Treasury. **January 2, 1672.**

c War declared against Holland. **March, 1672.**

- 1 Delay of France and England in prosecuting the war.
- 2 Intrepidity of *William*, the young Prince of Orange.
 "Do you not see that your country is lost?"
 "There is a sure way never to see it lost, and that is, *to die in the last ditch.*"

6. The Parliament of 1673, called owing to the necessities of the Dutch War. Pp. 627, 628.

- a Parliament insists on the revocation of the Declaration of Indulgence, as unconstitutional.
- b Parliament passes the *Test Act*, demanding from civil and military officers the oaths of *allegiance* and *supremacy*, a declaration against *transubstantiation* and the reception of the *Sacrament* according to the Anglican use. *The Duke of York*, Lord High Admiral, and *Clifford* acknowledge themselves Catholics and resign their offices.
- c Dismay of the people. All trust in the King at an end.

D Danby's Administration. 1674—1678. Pp. 628—638.

1. Shaftesbury's Early Life and Policy. Pp. 628—632.

a His early life. 1622—1660.

- 1 Even when a boy, distinguished for self-reliance.
- 2 In the Civil War, originally on the King's side, then passing over, eventually a member of the Council of State, "the loudest bagpipe of the squeaking train."
- 3 After the Restoration, apparently the wildest in the wild Court, but in reality devoted to business, and with a distinct and *liberal* policy.

b His policy.

- 1 Originally to acquiesce in the King's policy in the hopes of obtaining *Protestant Toleration*, possibly *Protestant Comprehension*.
- 2 After the discovery of the King's perfidy, to oppose the King, with the same hopes in view.
 - (a) Presses for the withdrawal of the Declaration of Indulgence.
 - (b) Supports the Test Act.
 - (c) Protests against the marriage of James to the Catholic Mary of Modena.
- 3 On his dismissal by the King he passes into open opposition. "It is only laying down my gown, and buckling on my sword." **November, 1673.**
 - (a) Spreads the report of a Papist rising and Irish revolt.

- (b) Presses the Bill for *Protestant securities*, that any Prince marrying a Roman Catholic be excluded from the throne. The Bill is rejected, but the King gives way to the popular feeling. *Buckingham* and *Arlington* dismissed. *Osborne*, Earl of Danby, a *Cavalier Churchman*, called to power. 1674.
2. Danby, a *Churchman*, hating Popery and Dissent, a *Cavalier*, but with a belief in Parliament and law, and a patriotic wish to shake off dependence on France. Pp. 632—638.
- a Divides the Opposition. P. 633.
- 1 By bribery. *The first English Minister who bribed.*
 - 2 By reviving the spirit of religious persecution; proposes the extension of the Test Act to all functionaries.
- b Deceived by the King, who, in spite of his entreaties, signs a second secret treaty with France (**February, 1676**, receiving an annual pension from Lewis of 100,000*l.*), he determines to rescue the King from his bondage by reconciling the Parliament to him. P. 634.
- 1 Sends Shaftesbury to the Tower for contempt of the House. **February, 1677.**
 - 2 Introduces the Bill for the *security of the Church*, that a Roman Catholic King have no Church patronage. 1677.
- c Danby's foreign policy marked by the same patriotic tendency. Pp. 634, 635.
- 1 The Prince of Orange invited to England, and married to *Mary, eldest child of the Duke of York, presumptive heiress of the Crown.* **November, 1677.**
 - 2 Indignation of Lewis. Danby, though eager for war with France, consents to write, *at the King's order*, a demand to Lewis for a pension for three years *as the price of peace.* **May, 1678.**
 - 3 Danby's policy defeated by his own delay. *The Treaty of Nimwegen* leaves France its conquests in Flanders and towards the Rhine, and the King of England with an army of twenty thousand men and a million of French money. 1678 and 1679.
- d The Popish Plot. Pp. 635, 636.
- 1 The panic first spread by Titus Oates, originally a Baptist, then a Jesuit, who brings information of a plot to subvert Protestantism and kill the King. **August, 1678.**

- 2 The belief in the existence of a plot strengthened
 - (a) by the seizure of the papers of Coleman, secretary to the Duchess of York ; Coleman executed, **December, 1678.**
 - (b) by the efforts of Shaftesbury ;
 - (c) by the death of Sir Edmondsbury Godfrey, **October 15, 1678.**
- e The Fall of Danby. Pp. 636—638.
 - 1 Shaftesbury trusts, *by means of the plot*, to separate the King from France, and to exclude James from the throne.
 - 2 Shaftesbury carries a Bill for the exclusion of Catholics from either House. James exempted by a special clause, and Shaftesbury practically defeated.
 - 3 Bedloe comes forward as a fresh informer of a plot to land a Papist army and massacre the Protestants. **January, 1679.**
 - 4 Recall of the English Ambassador (Montagu) from Paris through a quarrel with Danby, and *production by him of the letter written to Lewis by Danby at the King's order.*
 - 5 Retirement of Danby to save impeachment. **December, 1678.**

E Shaftesbury's Administration. Pp. 638—641. 1678, 1679.

1. Temple's plan for a new Council (really a restoration of the Royal Council to its older powers). Pp. 638, 639.
 - a The Council to consist of thirty members.
 - 1 Fifteen appointed by the Crown.
 - 2 Fifteen appointed by Parliament.
 - 3 Their joint income not to fall below 300,000*l.*, nearly the collective income of the House of Commons.
 - b Its inherent faults.
 - 1 Too large for secrecy and expedition.
 - 2 Too small for wide-reaching deliberation. (See Macaulay's Essay on Sir William Temple.)
2. The Exclusion of James from the Throne. P. 640.
 - a The King's concessions ; withdrawal of James to Holland, **March, 1679** ; a Catholic Sovereign to have no civil or military patronage, nor power to dissolve Parliament.
 - b Shaftesbury still presses for absolute exclusion, and prepares a Remonstrance from the Commons, and an Address from the City of *London*.

c The King gains time by proroguing Parliament. **May, 1679.**

3. Monmouth as Claimant for the Throne. Pp. 640, 641.

a Monmouth (a bastard son of the King) put forward by Shaftesbury as the heir to the Crown, to the exclusion of James and *of the Prince of Orange*. Consequent dissolution of the Country Party.

b Deserted by his colleagues, Shaftesbury urges on more vehemently the panic of the Popish plot. The Meal-tub Plot.

c The King, seeing the breach in the Opposition, dissolves the Cavalier Parliament and dismisses Shaftesbury. **November, 1679.**

F Shaftesbury again in Opposition. 1679—1682. Pp. 642—646.

1. The King re-opens secret negotiations with France.

2. Beginning of re-action against the story of the Popish plot, in spite of Shaftesbury's efforts to keep up the excitement.

3. Progress of the re-action; feeling begins to rise against the Exclusion Bill, *Petitioners and Abhorrrers*. Return of James to England from Scotland. **February, 1680.**

4. Resolute attempt of Shaftesbury to force the Exclusion Bill through Parliament. The Bill defeated by Halifax, *the mouthpiece of the Prince of Orange*. **November, 1680.**

5. Shaftesbury procures the impeachment and execution of the aged Lord Stafford as an accomplice in the Polish plot. **December.**

6. Halifax introduces the Limitation Bill, depriving James of right—

a of veto on any measure passed by Parliament;

b of negotiating with foreign powers;

c of civil or military appointments.

Opposed by the King.

7. The King, having obtained supplies from France, dissolves his second Parliament (**January, 1681**) and summons his third Parliament to *Oxford*, as an appeal against the disloyalty of the capital (**March, 1681**).

8. The riotous Parliament at Oxford: dissolution after a session of seven days.

9. The King summons his fourth Parliament to London.

a A burst of loyalty from the nation.

b Arrest of Shaftesbury, for suborning false witnesses. Acquittal of Shaftesbury, to the joy of London. **November, 1681.**

- c* Renewal of the persecution of the Nonconformists.
- d* Flight of Shaftesbury to Holland, and death there.
 "A champion for English freedom, *who associated the noblest of causes with the vilest of crimes.*"
 January, 1683.

G The Royal Tyranny to the Death of the King. 1683—1685.
 Pp. 646—649.

1. The Royal Triumph.

- a* The Whig defeat leads to the *Rye-house Plot* to kill the King and James on their road from London to Newmarket. Execution of *Russell* and *Algernon Sidney*, and flight of *Monmouth*. July, 1683.
- b* The University of Oxford proclaims *passive obedience* as a religious duty. July, 1683.

2. In spite of the Tyranny real constitutional progress made during this reign ; due to the work of the Long Parliament.
"The King was restored to nothing but what the law gave him."

- a* Cessation of illegal proclamations, and no attempt to revive illegal courts.
- b* Expiration of the statute for the regulation of printing. 1679. No attempt to re-enact it.
- c* *The Habeas Corpus Act*, abolishing all exceptions to the old practice of the law.
 - 1 Every prisoner, except for treason or felony, entitled to see the warrant for his imprisonment, even in the vacation of the courts.
 - 2 Prisoners for treason or felony to be released on bail if not indicted at the next sessions, to be discharged if not indicted at the sessions which follow. May 27, 1679.

3. The Despotism of the King.

- a* James re-appointed Lord High Admiral, and re-admitted to the Council in spite of the Test Act. 1684.
- b* Parliament not re-assembled, in spite of the Triennial Act.
- c* Opposition crushed by
 - 1 The quashing of town charters, as of London. June, 1683.
 - 2 The increase of the Royal army by the withdrawal of the garrison from Tangiers which is dismantled. 1683.

4. The Death of the King. February 6, 1685.

- a* The grief of the people at the King's illness.

- b* The King's reconciliation to the Roman Catholic Church.
- c* The King's bravery and humour even in the presence of death. "I am sorry I have been so unconscionable a time in dying."
- d* The King's death the salvation of English freedom.

James II. 1685—1688.

A Continuation of the Tyranny. Pp. 649—657.

1. Enthusiasm of the country at the pledge of the King to preserve the laws and to protect the Church. "We have the word of a King, and of a King who was never worse than his word."
2. The Rebellions. Pp. 649, 650.
 - a* In Scotland by Argyle, who had escaped to Holland, after being sentenced to death on grounds "*on which we should not hang a dog here.*" Argyle fails, owing to the insubordination of his followers—Sir Patrick Hume and Sir John Cochrane—and is executed. **June 30, 1685.**
 - b* In the West of England by Monmouth. Monmouth, supported by the miners of Cornwall, the farmers and traders of Devon and Dorset, and the clothier-towns of Somerset, the gentry standing aloof. Defeat of Monmouth at Sedgemoor, **July 6.** Execution of Monmouth, **July 15, 1685.**
3. The Bloody Assize, and Judge Jeffreys. Pp. 650, 651.
 - a* Three hundred and fifty rebels *hanged*, eight hundred *sold into slavery*, besides those whipped and imprisoned.
 - b* Even *women* scourged from market-town to market, sentenced to death *and to the stake* for sheltering rebels. (See the cases of Mrs. Lisle and Elizabeth Gaunt, and compare Macaulay's account of the proceedings in his History of England.)
 - c* Sale of Pardons by the Queen, the Maids of Honour (the Maids of Taunton), and the Judge.
 - d* Ruthlessness of the King. "*This marble is not harder than the King's heart.*" (See Macaulay's account of his interview with Monmouth.)
4. The King's Tyranny. Pp. 651—657.
 - a* The King's Foreign Policy. Pp. 651, 652.
 - i* In *absolute submission to France*. "Tell your master that without his protection I can do nothing."

2 Events in France.

(a) *Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. October 12, 1685.*

(b) Stamping out of Protestantism in blood, and flight of Huguenots to England; foundation by them of the silk trade at Spitalfields.

3 The Royal army in England increased to twenty thousand and filled with Roman Catholic officers: a camp opened at Hounslow to keep London quiet. 1686. Halifax dismissed, **October, 1685**, and Catholics admitted to the Royal Council.

b The King's Policy in Scotland and Ireland. Pp. 652, 653.

1 *In Scotland.*

(a) Government put into the hands of Roman Catholics.

(b) Refusal even of the Scotch Parliament to pass a Toleration Act for Roman Catholics, although bribed by the offer of free trade with England. "*Shall we sell our God?*" **March, 1686.**

(c) Treatment of the laws against Catholics as null by the King's command.

2 *In Ireland.*

(a) Government put into the hands of Tyrconnel and Roman Catholics. 1687.

(b) The army re-organized by the dismissal of Protestant officers.

c The King's attack on the Church. Pp. 653, 654.

1 *Directly.*

(a) Re-appearance of Roman Catholic priests and Jesuits in London.

(b) Appointments of seven Commissioners under Jeffreys for the Government. Suspension of the Bishop of London for permitting preaching against Popery. **September, 1686.**

(c) Opposition of the clergy, especially Tillotson and Stillingfleet.

2 *Indirectly through the Universities.*

(a) Dismissal of the Vice-Chancellor of Cambridge for refusing to confer a degree on a Benedictine monk. **May, 1687.**

(b) Retention of the Roman Catholic Master of University College, Oxford.

Appointment of a Roman Catholic to the

deanery of *Christ Church*. **December, 1686.**

Military installation of a Roman Catholic as President of *Magdalen College*; expulsion of the protesting Fellows and Demies; introduction of Roman Catholics in their place. **December, 1687.**

d The King's Policy in the State. Pp. 654—657.

- 1 Dissolution of Parliament and disgrace of Clarendon and Rochester. The King proceeds with his work *alone*. **July, 1687.**
- 2 Attempt to win over the Nonconformists by a *Declaration of Indulgence*. **1687.** Refusal of the Declaration by the Nonconformists.
- 3 Attempt to call a Parliament to repeal the Test Act; the House of Lords packed by the creation of new peers; abandonment of the scheme, owing to the impossibility of getting a House of Commons.
- 4 Issue of a fresh Declaration of Indulgence to be read in Church, **April 7, 1688.**
- 5 Refusal of the clergy to read it, and protest of seven Bishops.
- 6 Trial of the Seven Bishops, **June 29, 1688.** Acquittal, to the joy of the nation, *and even of the army.*

B William the Deliverer. Pp. 657—668.

1. The state of Europe, and the predominance of France. Pp. 657—659.

a State of the other European nations,

Spain falling into decrepitude.

The Empire still suffering from the effects of the Thirty Years' war, and the independence of the German Princes secured by the Peace of Westphalia. **1648.**

Austria engaged in fighting against the Turks.

Sweden exhausted by the efforts made under Gustavus.

The United Provinces struggling with England for the mastery of the sea.

England a dependency of France.

b Rise of France.

- 1 Industry and trade of the Huguenots *south of the Loire* since the Edict of Nantes, **1598**, and consequent increase of wealth.

- 2 Suppression of feudal abuses by Richelieu. 1610.
 - 3 Immense army and navy.
 - 4 Ability of French Ministers ; Richelieu, 1610, who defeated the House of Austria by his Protestant alliance ; Mazarin, 1643, who disorganized the Empire by the Peace of Westphalia, and weakened Spain by the Treaty of the Pyrenees ; Lionne, Louvois, Colbert. 1661.
 - 5 Aim of Lewis XIV. the completion of the ruin of Spain.
 - (a) By occupying the Spanish Netherlands.
 - (b) By securing the succession to the Spanish throne.
2. William, as Prince of Orange. Pp. 659—663.
- a Invasion of Holland by the French, encouraged by the French policy of the merchants headed by De Witt. 1672. Holland saved by William's energy in defeat.
 - b Formation by William of a coalition of Holland, Spain, and the Empire, against France, ending in the peace of Nimwegen, by which Lewis retains his conquests in Flanders, and towards the Rhine. 1678—1679.
 - c French occupation of Franche-Comté, Lorraine, and Elsass. Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. 1685.
 - d William's plan for a larger coalition against France, to include England ; seen in the last reign by his marriage and by his opposition to the Exclusion Bill, which would have given the throne to Monmouth.
 - e The attitude of William to James II.
 - 1 Refuses aid to the English malcontents in Holland. 1685.
 - 2 Protests against the Declaration of Indulgence. 1687.
 - 3 By exciting James's suspicions, makes him more resolute in his Irish policy. 1687.
 - 4 Sends Dykvelt to organize the English opposition, to preserve Mary's future kingdom.
3. The English Invitation to William. Pp. 663—667.
- a Announcement of the Queen's pregnancy. Alarm in England for a Roman Catholic Prince of Wales. Invitation to William signed by Danby, Compton, Devonshire, as representing the Tories, the High Churchmen, and the Whigs.
 - b Birth of the Prince of Wales, June 10, 1688. Flight

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

of English nobles to the Hague, and desertion of James by his Minister *Sunderland*.

c Lewis XIV. attacks Germany instead of Holland.
The greatest political error of his reign.

d Landing of William in Torbay. **November 5, 1688.**

1 Desertion of James by Churchill (Marlborough), his general, and his daughter Anne. **November 22 and 28.**

2 Flight of James, and arrest on the sea coast, **December 12.** Second flight, and escape to France. **December 23, 1688.**

4. The Revolution. Pp. 667, 668.

a Summoning of the House of Peers and of all who had sat in the House of Commons in the reign of Charles II.

b By their advice, William summons a Convention. **January 22, 1689.**

c James declared to have *abdicated* the Government and left the Throne vacant.

d William declining the *Regency*, William and Mary declared King and Queen. William to have the practical administration.

e The *Declaration of Rights*, denying the right of the King, without the consent of Parliament,

1 to levy taxes,

2 to exert dispensing power,

3 to levy troops.

Claiming the right of the subject

1 to elect to Parliament,

2 to petition,

3 to have fair justice ;

and of Parliament to liberty of debate.

f Acceptance of the Declaration, and proclamation of William and Mary as King and Queen. **February 13, 1689.**

William III. 1689—1702. Pp. 668—686.

A The Grand Alliance. Pp. 668, 669.

1. The flight of James, involving the defeat of the policy of Lewis.

2. James acknowledged as King by Lewis. Declaration of war by England. **May 7, 1689.**

3. Formation of the Grand Alliance,—England, Holland, Spain, the Empire, Austria. **May.**
- B William and Scotland.** Pp. 669—671.
1. Summoning of Scotch Convention. **March 14.** James declared to have *forfeited the Crown by misgovernment.*
 2. Presentation of the Claim of Right, closing with a demand for the abolition of Prelacy. **March 4.**
 3. Revolt of the Highlands *against the restoration of the House of Argyle.*
 - a Defeat of the Royal forces at Killiecrankie, counter-balanced by the death of Dundee (Claverhouse). **July 27, 1689.**
 - b Submission of the clans and building of Fort William. **1690.**
 - c *Massacre of the Macdonalds of Glencoe* for delay in making submission. **February 13, 1692.** Known at the time to few but the Master of Stair.
 - d The King urges a Toleration Act on the Scots. "So long as I reign *there shall be no persecution for conscience sake.*"
- C The Irish Revolt.** Pp. 677, 672.
1. Tyrconnel begins the revolt in Dublin. James lands in Ireland. **March, 1689.**
 2. *Siege of Londonderry* by James's army for one hundred and three days. **April 20—July 30.** The siege raised by the re-victualling of the town. (*See Macaulay's account of the siege in his History.*) **1689.**
 3. Repeal by the Irish Parliament of the Act of Settlement. *Attainder of three thousand Protestants.* **May.**
- D England and the Revolution.** Pp. 672—676.
1. The Bill of Rights, restoring the monarchy *to its old condition before the rise of the new monarchy under Edward IV.* Re-establishment of the right of the people to depose their King and set on the throne whom they would. **October 25, 1689.**
 2. The grant of the Royal revenue limited to a term of four years. Irritation of the King, and consequent limitation of the grant *to one year.*
 3. *The Mutiny Act*, granting pay and disciplinary powers to the army *for one year.*
By these two statutes, 2 and 3, *the annual assembly of Parliament made an absolute necessity.*
 4. *The Triennial Bill*, limiting the duration of a Parliament to three years, vetoed by the King.
 5. Scheme for Protestant comprehension defeated, but *Toleration Act passed.* **May 24, 1690.**
 - a Active persecution made impossible.

- b* The dissenting bodies friendly to reform when opposed by the Church. *Thus religion not identified with political re-action.*
- 6. Expulsion of Sancroft and the Non-Jurors (*i.e.* those who refused the oath of allegiance to the new Sovereigns). **February, 1690.**
- 7. The King's Act of General Indemnity rejected by the Whigs. The King, alarmed by the activity of the French, the virtual defeat of the fleet off Beachy Head and in Bantry Bay, and the appearance of a Jacobite party in England, dissolves Parliament, and issues *in his own name an Act of Grace.* **1690.**
- 8. A new Parliament called, which is mainly Tory; *Danby* first Minister. **1690.**

E The Irish Campaign. 1689—1691. Pp. 676—678.

- 1. Landing of Schomberg with the Royal forces. **Autumn, 1689.**
- 2. French auxiliaries sent over to James. Landing of William. *Battle of the Boyne.* **July 1, 1690.** Panic of James and total rout of his army.
- 3. Siege of *Limerick.* **August 8—30.** *Sarsfield* obliges William to raise the siege.
- 4. *Marlborough* captures Cork and Kinsale. **Winter, 1690.**
- 5. *Ginkel* captures Athlone; routs the Irish army at *Aughrim.* **July.** *Sarsfield* obliged to surrender Limerick, **August, 1691.** *Capitulation of Limerick* (that the Catholics should enjoy such privileges as are compatible with law), not ratified by Parliament. **October.** Ireland silent *under legal tyranny* till the French Revolution.

F The Jacobite Plots. Pp. 678—680.

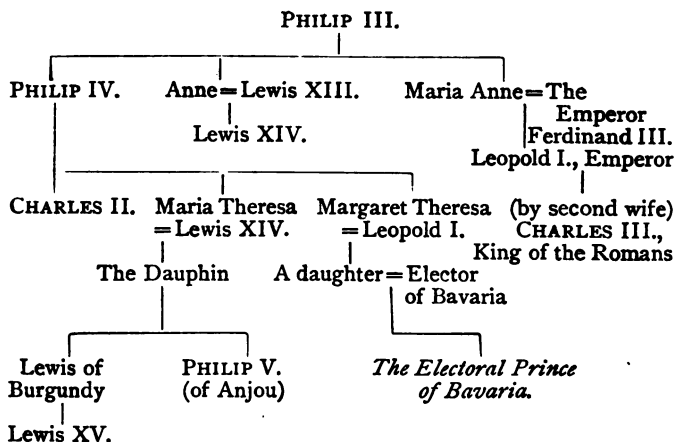
- 1. Defeat of the English fleet off Beachy Head through the treachery of Herbert, the Admiral. *The last French naval victory.* **July, 1690.**
- 2. The King takes command in Flanders; French capture *Mons*, the strongest fortress in the Netherlands. **1691.**
- 3. Treason of Marlborough and Russell (the new commander of the fleet).
 - a* Marlborough's plan to depose William and enthrone Anne, over whom his wife has complete power.
 - b* Russell's sense of official duty stronger than his intrigues. "Do not think I will let the French triumph over us in our own seas." Victory of *La Hogue*, crushing the existence of France as a naval power. **May 19, 1692.**
- 4. French victories on land at *Steinkirk*, **August, 1692**, and *Neerwinden*, **July 19, 1693**, only end in loss of life and exhaustion of France.

G The First English Ministry. Pp. 680—684.

1. The sovereignty transferred by the Revolution *from the King to the House of Commons*, but the Commons still deficient in power to make its will bear on public affairs; hence perpetual jealousy and friction.
 2. Sunderland (formerly Minister of James) solves the difficulty by advising that Ministers be chosen *exclusively* from the party strongest in the House of Commons. 1693. Hence
 - a* Unity and responsibility of ministers, who become the servants of *the country*, not of the King.
 - b* The House of Commons organised and satisfied.
 3. The King gradually adopts the plan, being driven to the Whigs by the Tory opposition to the war. Formation of the Whig Junto under *Somers, Montagu, Shrewsbury*. 1694, 1695. Its effects.
 - a* Triennial Bill becomes law. May, 1695.
 - b* Recognition of the freedom of the press, and consequent multiplication of public prints. 1695.
 - c* *Establishment of the Bank of England*—forbidden to lend money to Crown without consent of Parliament. 1694.
 - d* Creation of the *National Debt*, the greatest security against the return of James, who would have repudiated it.
 - e* Reform of the debased coinage. 1696.
 - f* Vigorous prosecution of the war.
 - 1 Capture of Namur by the Allies. 1695.
 - 2 The Peace of Ryswick. May—October, 1697.
 - (*a*) Abandonment by France of all her annexations since treaty of Nimwegen, except Strassburg; restoration of Lorraine, Luxembourg, and conquests in Netherlands.
 - (*b*) Abandonment by France of Stuart cause. Recognition of William as King of England.
- (For the characters of these Whig statesmen, see Macaulay's History.)

H The Spanish Succession. Pp. 684—686.

1. The claimants to the Spanish throne.
 - a* The Dauphin, son of the Spanish King's elder sister.
 - b* The Electoral Prince of Bavaria, son of the Spanish King's younger sister.
 - c* The Emperor, grandson of Spanish King's aunt.
- The claims of the Dauphin and the Electoral Prince barred by special treaties.



- ## 2. The first Partition Treaty between England, Holland, and France. 1698.

The *Electoral Prince* to succeed to *Spain*, the *Dauphin* to the *Two Sicilies*, the *Emperor* to the *Milanese*.

- 3. Death of the Electoral Prince ; weariness in England of the war ; the Whigs driven from office.**

- #### 4. The second Partition Treaty. 1700.

Spain, the Indies, and the Netherlands to go to the Emperor's second son, Archduke Charles.

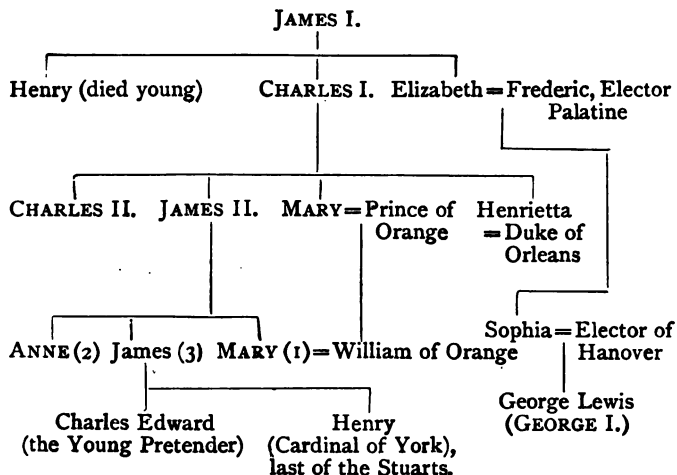
The *Two Sicilies* and *Lorraine* to be given to France.

1 The Second Grand Alliance. Pp. 686—688.

1. Indignation of the Spaniards at the Partition Treaties. Will of the King of Spain bequeathing all the Spanish Empire to the Duke of Anjou, second son of the Dauphin.
2. Acceptance of the will by France. Little alarm or indignation in England, to the King's great grief.
3. The King's last illness. Vigour of his exertions against France, although without allies abroad, and compelled to accept a Tory Ministry under Godolphin at home. 1701.
4. Introduction of French troops into the Spanish towns. Disregard of the English demand for their withdrawal. Growing indignation in England against France.
5. Death of James II. **September, 1701.** Lewis acknowledges his son as King of England. Effect in England.

a Passing the *Act of Settlement*, settling the succession (Princess Anne's last child being dead) in Sophia, Electress of Hanover, and her heirs, being Protestants.

Table showing the Hanoverian descent.



b The Second Grand Alliance between England, the Empire, Holland; joined afterwards by Denmark, Sweden, and most of the German States.

c A vote of forty thousand men for the war.

6. Marlborough put in command of the army. Death of the King. **March 8, 1702.** *"I see another scene, and could wish to live a little longer."*

Anne. 1702—1714. Pp. 688—704.

A Marlborough and the War. Pp. 688—692.

1. Early life and character of Marlborough.

a First sees service under Turenne; "the handsome Englishman."

b Lays the foundation of his fortune as the lover of Lady Castlemaine.

c Commands for James at Sedgemoor. 1685.

d Betrays James and goes over to William after his landing. Commands for William in Ireland. 1689.

e Plots to depose William, and enthrone Anne, his wife's friend (Mrs. Morley and Mrs. Freeman) in her place.

f Disgraced and dismissed from Court. Corresponds

with James, revealing the war secrets of the English Ministers. Recalled by William to command in Flanders. 1702.

2. Character of Marlborough.

a His mind purely intellectual, "untinctured by the affections."

b One bright spot; his deep affection for his wife.

c As a statesman; "*Patience will overcome all things.*"

d As a soldier—

1 His age. He holds no great command till he is fifty-two.

2 His success. "He never besieged a fortress which he did not take, or fought a battle which he did not win."

3 The vigour and audacity of his plans.

3. Marlborough and the War. Pp. 692—696.

a Prevented by the Dutch from forcing a battle in Brabant, he reduces the French fortresses, Venloo, Ruremonde, Liège, cutting the French off from the Lower Rhine, and freeing Holland from fear of invasion. 1702.

b The French armies press towards Vienna. Marlborough prevented by the Dutch from attacking Antwerp and French Flanders, continues the reduction of the French fortresses. 1703.

c Marlborough, after carefully concealing his purpose both from the French and the Dutch, strikes across Germany for the Danube, storms Donauwörth, penetrates into Bavaria, joins Prince Eugene, meets the French on the Danube near *Blenheim*. Battle of *Blenheim*. (See Creasy's "Fifteen Decisive Battles.")

1 The whole Teutonic race represented in the armies of Marlborough and Eugene.

2 Marlborough for once free from the timidity of his allies.

3 The battle won by an attack on the French centre over a road made across the morass. Rout of the French.

4 The spell of French victory broken. August 13, 1704.

d Capture of Gibraltar by Sir George Rooke. 1704.

e Tory opposition to the war.

1 The Tories in power replaced by more moderate Tories, supporters of the war, *Harley* (Oxford) and *St. John* (Bolingbroke).

2 Still further modification of the Ministry. Coalition

between the moderate Tories and the Whig Junto.
1705.

f Continued opposition of the allies to Marlborough's plans. "Had I had the same power I had last year, I could have won a greater victory than that of Blenheim." Victories of Lord Peterborough (Mordaunt) in Spain, and recognition of the Archduke, younger son of the Emperor, as Charles III. of Spain. 1705.

g Battle of Ramillies, near Tirlemont, between Villeroy and Marlborough. Marlborough wins the battle by a charge on the French *right*; total rout of the French in an hour and a half. **May 12, 1706.** The French driven completely out of Flanders. 1706.

B The Union of England and Scotland. Pp. 696—698.

1. Projects for Union checked by religious and commercial jealousies—England claiming a monopoly of colonial trade. Scotland refusing to pay any part of English debt.
2. Princess Sophia excluded from the Scotch Act of Security. 1703. Alarm of English statesmen for a return of the Pretender.
3. Act of Union passed owing to the exertions of Lord Somers. 1707.
 - a* Scotch Law and Church left untouched.
 - b* Trade thrown open, and a universal coinage adopted.
 - c* The Scots to send forty-five representatives to the United House of Commons, England sending five hundred and thirteen, and sixteen peers to the United House of Lords, the English peers being one hundred and eight.
4. Success of the Union; an acknowledgment and enforcement of a national fact.

C Marlborough, the Whigs, and the War. Pp. 698—700.

1. Marlborough's the last attempt to govern England except by party government.
2. Marlborough driven more and more to the Whigs; dismissal of *Harley* and *St. John* to make room for *Somers* and *Wharton*. Dissatisfaction of the Queen. Quarrel between Mrs. Freeman and Mrs. Morley. 1709.
3. Marlborough defeats Vendome at *Oudenarde*, near Antwerp, and *Lille*. **July 11, 1708.** Lewis proposes terms of peace; rejected, not by Marlborough, *but by the Whigs*, who demand that Lewis should compel his grandson to give up Spain. "If I must wage war, I had rather wage it on my enemies than on my children."
4. The defeat of the French at Malplaquet, near Mons; but

they retreat in such dense masses that Marlborough can not break them. "*A deluge of blood.*" September 11, 1709.

5. Growing Tory dissatisfaction, expressed by *St. John, Prior, and Swift*. "Six millions of supplies and almost fifty millions of debt! The High Allies have been the ruin of us."
6. Prosecution by the Whigs of Dr. Sacheverell for a sermon on non-resistance. Practically acquitted, to the joy of the nation. "*The Church and Dr. Sacheverell.*" March, 1710.

D The Fall of Marlborough. P. 700.

1. Marlborough's wife supplanted in the Queen's favour by Mrs. Masham. 1711.
2. Return of the Tory Ministers, and finally a return of a Tory House of Commons. 1711.
3. Marlborough dismissed, accused of peculation and found guilty; retires from England till after the Queen's death. November, 1712.

E The Rise of Walpole. Pp. 701, 702. (See Macaulay's Essay on Horace Walpole.)

1. Walpole the *first of the great Commoners*.
2. Walpole "the first who gave our Government its character of *lenity*."
3. Even at his first appearance remarkable as a *debater, financier, and administrator*, "he does everything with the same ease and tranquillity as if he were doing nothing."

F The Peace of Utrecht. P. 702.

Spain given to Philip, grandson of Lewis.

Spanish possessions in *Italy* and *Netherlands* given to the Arch-duke, now Emperor.

Sicily to the Duke of Savoy.

Minorca and *Gibraltar* given to England. *Anne* and the *Protestant Succession* recognised, Dunkirk dismantled. *Prussia* acknowledged as a kingdom. March—July.

G The Death of the Queen. P. 703.

1. Bolingbroke proposes *free trade* between France and England; defeated by the Whigs.
2. Illness of the Queen. *Oxford* (Harley) and *Bolingbroke* (St. John) open intrigues with the Stuarts.
3. Sudden death of the Queen. July 30, 1714. George Lewis of Hanover proclaimed as George I. without opposition, the Jacobites being unprepared. 1714.

George I. 1714—1727.**A England and the House of Hanover. Pp. 704—706.**

1. George I. "honest and straightforward, but with the temper of a gentleman usher, and the one care of making money for himself and his favourites."

George II. "honest and brave, but with the temper of a drill sergeant ; repeating the lessons his wife and Minister taught him."

2. England ruled by Ministers, and by Ministers of one party —*the Tory party is dead and gone*. The Whigs the sole representatives of toleration, freedom, and commerce. "Liberty, Property, and No Pretender."
3. Causes of the length of the Whig predominance in England.
 - a* Their excellent organisation under the great families —Bentinck, Campbell, Cavendish, Russell, Grenville.
 - b* Their attention to trade and finance.
 - c* Their loyalty to their principles—toleration, liberty of the press, free justice, parliamentary rule.
 - d* Their conservative policy.
 - 1 Their foreign policy a peace policy.
 - 2 Their ecclesiastical policy inoffensive.
 - 3 Their encouragement of material rather than of political progress.

B The Townshend-Walpole Ministry and the Jacobite Revolt. 1714, 1715.

1. Impeachment of Oxford, and flight of Bolingbroke.
2. Revolt of the Highlands under Earl Mar *against the House of Argyle*. Indecisive action of Sheriff-Muir, near Stirling. Arrival of the Pretender. 1715. Flight of the Pretender and dispersion of the clans. 1716.
3. Revolt in England under Earl Derwentwater and Mr. Foster ; surrender of the revoltors at *Preston*. November, 1715.
4. No rigorous measures taken to reduce the Highland clans.

C The Stanhope Ministry. 1716—1721.

1. Stanhope's Parliamentary Policy.
 - a* Duration of Parliament extended to seven years by the *Septennial Act*.
 - b* Introduction of a Bill to limit the number of the Upper House, *defeated by Walpole*.

2. Stanhope's Foreign Policy.

- a* Attempt of Cardinal Alberoni to recover the Spanish possessions in Italy; joined by Charles XII. of Sweden and the Jacobites.
- b* A Triple Alliance, England, France, and Holland against Spain, guaranteeing the Hanoverian succession in England and the Orleans succession in France, should Lewis XV. die without an heir. 1717.
- c* The Triple Alliance joined by the Emperor. 1718. Defeat and dismissal of Alberoni, death of Charles XII. Sicily and Sardinia ceded by Spain. Reversion of Tuscany and Parma secured for the Infante.

3. Stanhope's Domestic Policy.

The South Sea Bubble.

- a* Originally a scheme for reducing the national debt, in exchange for the monopoly of the Spanish trade, defeated by the jealousy of Spain. 1711.
- b* Develops into a scheme to buy up the unredeemable annuities granted during the last two reigns, in exchange for further privileges. Encouraged by the Government in spite of the opposition of Walpole. Bursting of the Bubble; grief and death of Stanhope. 1720 and 1721.

D The Walpole Administration. 1721—1742. Pp. 708—712.

- 1. *His rule almost without a History.* Cessation of political and legislative activity.
- 2. Walpole the first and greatest of our peace Ministers. The state of Europe.
 - a* *The Emperor Charles VI.*, having no son, issues a *Pragmatic Sanction*, as yet unguaranteed, bequeathing his hereditary possessions in *Austria*, *Hungary*, *Sicily*, and *Bohemia* to his daughter, *Maria Theresa*. 1720.
 - b* *Spain*, anxious to recover *Minorca* and *Gibraltar*, offers to guarantee the *Pragmatic Sanction* in exchange for *Tuscany* and *Parma*, to be given to the King's second son, *Don Carlos*.
 - c* Secret treaty between *Catherine I. of Russia*, *Spain*, and the *Emperor*; Russia meditates an attack on *Denmark*.
 - d* Defensive treaty between *England*, *France*, and *Prussia*; *Sweden* detached from *Russia* by a subsidy; *Denmark* protected by an English fleet sent to the *Baltic*.

e Withdrawal of *Prussia* from the defensive treaty; Spanish siege of Gibraltar; war threatened by the Emperor. 1727. Firm attitude of *England*, *France*, and *Holland*; death of Catherine of Russia, and treaty of *Seville*. 1729.

f Treaty of *Vienna* with the Emperor; *Tuscany* and *Parma* secured to Don Carlos. *Pragmatic Sanction* guaranteed. 1731.

3. Walpole the first of our *Finance Ministers*.

a *Diminution of taxation*, owing to the progress of manufactures, increase of commerce, and improvement of agriculture. Rise of Manchester, Birmingham, and Liverpool. Introduction of winter roots, artificial grasses, rotation of crops.

b *Direct* exportation of rice to any part of Europe allowed to Georgia and Carolina. 1730.

c The *Excise* Bill (an attempt to supersede the land-tax by indirect taxation).

1 First introduced by Pym in the Long Parliament.

2 Walpole's Bill aims at introducing

(*a*) Establishment of bonded warehouse.

(*b*) The collection of duties as Excise, not as *Customs*. Excise paid by the dealers; Customs by the importer.

Withdrawn in consequence of the opposition. 1733.

"I will not be the Minister to enforce taxes at the price of blood."

4. Walpole and the Parliament.

a The first Minister to *systematise bribery*; his policy to be ascribed to the power of the House of Commons, combined with its freedom from responsibility to the nation, and his own failure to create enthusiasm.

b Growing opposition to Walpole, increased by his jealous usurpation of power. "Rise of the 'Patriots' (*i.e.* discontented Whigs) under Pulteney and Chesterfield.

George III. 1727—1760.

A Continuation of the Walpole Administration. Pp. 712—715.

1. Queen Caroline and Walpole.

a Walpole supported by the Queen, and therefore, though unwillingly, by the King.

b Walpole refuses to join in the war about the election to the throne of Poland, which on the death of

Augustus the Strong is disputed by his son, and Stanislaus who had been made king by Charles XII. "There are fifty thousand men slain this year in Europe, and not one Englishman." 1733.

2. The Spanish War.

- a Walpole's power shaken by the death of the Queen, 1737, and by the support given to the "Patriots" by Frederick, Prince of Wales.
- b Spanish jealousy of English trade with Spanish South America. Walpole's efforts to keep peace; "the cur-dog of England and spaniel of France." Excitement produced by the story of Jenkins' ears.
- c *Secret family compact* between France and Spain for the destruction of England's maritime power. 1733. As yet unknown.
- d Walpole's struggle for peace against the "Patriots," and the "Boys" headed by *Pitt*.
- e Walpole consents to war. 1737. "They may ring their bells now, but they will soon be wringing their hands."

f The War.

- 1 Death of the Emperor Charles VI. 1740. Attack on Maria Theresa by *France, Spain, and Prussia*. *England alone true to its word*.
- 2 Hungarian enthusiasm for Maria Theresa, who had restored their Constitution. "Moriatur pro rege nostro Maria Theresa." Defeat of Frederick of Prussia. 1742.
- 3 English defeat at Carthage; anxiety and resignation of Walpole. 1742.

B William Pitt. 1742—1762. Pp. 716—737.

1. State of the Nation. Pp. 716—722.

a The Church and the Georges.

- 1 Indifference to religious speculation and public affairs due in part to the suspension of Convocation. 1717. The Bishops Whigs; the Clergy Tories.
- 2 Want of religious activity. "The most remiss in their labours, and the least severe in their lives."
- 3 No religious or educational effort to meet the increase of population; brutality of the people increased by the introduction of gin.
- b The Religious Revival. "The Methodists," so called from the regularity of their lives, begin in the *University of Oxford*.
- 1 Whitfield the preacher; his sermons marked by sympathy with the sin and sorrow of mankind.

2 Charles Wesley "the sweet singer;" tones down the excitement of the movement and changes the nature of public worship.

3 John Wesley, the preacher, the poet, above all *the organiser*. 1703—1791.

(a) His asceticism, and belief in the supernatural.

(b) His Conservatism; clings to the Church, for long condemns lay-preaching, opposes the Calvinism of Whitfield.

(c) His powers of administration; the organisation of the Methodists; calming influence of his common sense.

(d) His fondness for sole power.

c Effects of Methodism.

1 "The Evangelical Movement" in the Church (Newton, Cecil), gradual disappearance of the fox-hunting parson and absentee rector.

2 The New Philanthropy.

(a) *Sunday Schools* established by Mr. Raikes, of Gloucester.

(b) Efforts among and for the *agricultural labourer* by Hannah More. 1745—1833.

(c) Feeling for the wretched and oppressed.

Burke's plea for the Hindoo against the English. 1786.

Crusade of Clarkson and Wilberforce against the Slave Trade. 1786—1806.

Hospitals and asylums.

Missions to the heathen.

(d) John Howard and the prisons.

(1) Made High Sheriff of Bedfordshire. 1774.

(2) Visits and makes personal trial of the gaols in England; no distinction of sex or crime; starvation; prevalence of gaol fever.

(3) Visits the lazarettos of Europe. Dies of fever at Cherson in Russia.

2. The Pelhams (Newcastle and Henry Pelham) in power. Pp. 722—727.

a Cession of Silesia by Maria Theresa; *Carteret's* war policy to *ruin the House of Bourbon*.

1 Battle of Dettingen, between Mt. Spessart and the Main. Defeat of the French and evacuation of Germany. June 27, 1743.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 2 Alliance between Frederick of Prussia and France to prevent the aggrandisement of Austria.
 - 3 Cumberland defeated in Flanders by Marshal Saxe. Battle of Fontenoy. Defeat but orderly retreat of the English. **May 31, 1745.**
 - 4 Landing of the Young Pretender in Scotland at Moidart. **July 25, 1745.**
 - 5 Convention of Hanover between England and Prussia.
- b* The Young Pretender.
- 1 James VIII. (his father) proclaimed King in Edinburgh.
 - 2 Victory of the Pretender at *Preston-pans*, near Edinburgh. **September 21, 1745.**
 - 3 The Pretender advances to *Derby*, **December 4**; the country fails to support him; falls back to Glasgow; defeats the pursuing Royal army at Falkirk. **January 23, 1746.**
 - 4 Breaking up of the Pretender's forces; final defeat of the Pretender on Culloden Moor, near Inverness. **April 16, 1746.** Escape of the Pretender to France. **September, 1746.**
 - 5 Measures for the tranquillity of the Highlands.
 - (a) Abolition of feudal tenures, and hereditary jurisdiction of chiefs.
 - (b) The wearing of tartan forbidden; permitted to Scotch regiments.
 - (c) Act of Indemnity.
- c* The Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, *a mere truce produced by exhaustion.* **1748.**
- 1 Alliance between *France and Spain* (who still hold to the Family Compact of 1733) and *Maria Theresa* (who desires the recovery of Silesia and partition of Prussia), aided by Russia. **1752—1755.**
 - 2 Outbreak of the Seven Years' War.
 - (a) The French attack on England.
 - (1) Attempt to found a French empire in *India* and expel the English merchants.
 - (2) To destroy the English colonies in *America* by seizing the S. Lawrence, Mississippi, Ohio, and Alleghanies. Defeat of the English general Braddock. **1755.**
 - (b) Outbreak of the war. **1755.**
 - (1) Loss of Port Mahon in Minorca, through the incapacity of Byng.

(2) Defeat of Frederick at Kolin, and capitulation of Cumberland at Closter-Seven. 1756.

3. The Pitt-Newcastle Ministry. 1757. Pp. 727—731.

a Pitt the inspirer of the foreign policy.
Newcastle the manager of Parliament.

b The character of Pitt. "England has been a long time in labour, but she has at last brought forth *a man*." (See Macaulay's Essays on William Pitt and Earl of Chatham.)

1 The first purely *public-spirited* statesman since the Restoration. Above *corruption* or flattery of popular prejudice.

2 The first *national* statesman since the Restoration. "Be one people; forget everything but the public; I set you the example."

3 His power derived not from Parliament, but from the great *unrepresented* mass of the nation. "It is the *people* who sent me here."

4 Pitt's power as an orator due to earnestness, sincerity, enthusiasm. The first *national* orator (whose words address the *nation* at large).

4. The Ministry and the War. Pp. 731—737.

a *The re-creation of Germany* by the victory of Rossbach, won by means of English gold. 1757.

b *The creation of the British Empire in India* by Clive. (See Macaulay's Essays on Clive.)

1 Attempt of Dupleix to found a French power in the name of the Great Mogul. French conquest of *Hyderabad*. Dupleix foiled by Clive's surprise and defence of Arcot, and defeat of the French in conjunction with the Mahrattas. 1751.

2 Attack of Surajah Dowlah on Calcutta. Imprisonment of the English in the Black Hole. Clive sent to revenge the crime. *Battle of Plassey*; defeat and death of Surajah Dowlah. **June 23, 1757.**

c English victories in Europe.

1 Defeats of Frederick by the Austrians at Hochkirch, and at Kunersdorf by the Russians. 1759.

2 Defeat of the French by Frederick of Brunswick and the English at *Minden*, on the Weser. **August 1, 1759.**

3 Defeat of the French fleet at *Quiberon Bay*, in the midst of a furious storm. **November 20, 1759.**

d The Conquest of Canada.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- 1 Continuation of the French attempt to cut off the English colonies.
- 2 English conquest of Cape Breton island, and capture of Fort Duquesne (on the *Ohio*). 1758. Capture of *Ticonderoga*, on *Lake Champlin*, and *Fort Niagara*, on the *S. Lawrence*. 1759.
- 3 Wolfe's attack and capture of Quebec, **September 12, 1759**. Death of Wolfe. *Submission of Canada*.

George III. 1760—1820.**A Character of the King.** Pp. 740—742.

1. His want of culture. "Was there ever such stuff as Shakespeare?"
2. His jealousy of superior men—as Pitt.
3. His obstinacy in his purpose to rule and "be a King:" strengthened by the rallying of the Tories round "a British Patriot King."
4. His loyalty to the nation up to his lights.

B The American Colonies. Pp. 737—739.

1. Their History since the Puritan Emigration.
 - a* Final gain of Dutch possessions in America (*New York, New Jersey, Delaware*) after the Dutch War. 1674.
 - b* Foundation of the Quaker Settlement of *Pennsylvania* by Penn. 1682.
 - c* Foundation of *Georgia* by Oglethorpe, "driven by strong benevolence of soul," as a refuge for debtors and persecuted Protestants. 1739.
 - d* Their population already a fourth of that of the mother country.
2. Their Characteristics.
 - a* In the States south of the *Potomac*, slavery, large plantations, aristocratic spirit.
 - b* In the States north of the *Potomac*, free labour, towns and villages, democratic institutions, education and political activity.
 - c* In *all* the States religious tolerance produced by the medley of religions.
 - d* Political and social difference from England. "Mr. Grenville lost America because he read the American despatches."

C The Peace of Paris and the Ministry of Bute. Pp. 742—745.

1. Pitt Frederick's only ally : discontent of the Whigs at the war, and Pitt's supremacy.
2. Fresh Family Compact between France and Spain. 1761. Pitt presses for war with Spain, and refuses the peace proposals of France.
3. The fall of Pitt. **October, 1761.**
4. The Ministry of Bute, and the Peace of Paris. **September, 1763.** *Florida* gained in exchange for *Cuba* and the *Philippines*. *Canada* and *Nova Scotia* and claim to military settlement in *India* ceded by France.
5. The King strengthens the Royal power by buying seats and votes in the House of Commons, and creating a party of "King's friends."
6. Furious opposition to, and resignation of, Bute. 1763.

D The Ministry of George Grenville, and the Oligarchical Whigs. Pp. 745—749.

1. Grenville's outrage on the Press.
 - a The prosecution of Wilkes, the author of the "North Briton." 1764. Wilkes sent to prison on a "general warrant" (i.e. a warrant not naming the person to be arrested, and issued by the Secretary of State, not by a magistrate). Wilkes expelled from the House of Commons. Popular indignation.
2. Grenville's outrage on the American Colonies.
 - a Grenville raises the import duties at colonial ports, to defray part of the English debt.
 - b Restricts the colonial trade to British ports, undoing Walpole's policy.
 - c Revives the scheme of a *stamp* or excise duty. Protest of *Virginia*, *Massachusetts*, and of a General Congress, on the ground that taxation implied representation. 1765.
3. Resentment of the King at Grenville's arrogant treatment of himself. "I would as soon see the Devil come into my Cabinet."
4. Grenville succeeded by Rockingham. *Resistance of the Colonies* seen in a Congress of Nine Colonies at New York, **October, 1765**, and repeal of the Stamp Act. The right to tax the Colonies still maintained. **March 18, 1766.**
5. Pitt consents to form a Ministry without regard to party distinctions.
 - a Pitt accepts the Earldom of Chatham. Sudden loss of popular favour.
 - b Pitt's illness. He retires from public affairs.

- c Disorganisation of his Ministry ; change of character ; it becomes *the King's Ministry* guided by the Duke of Grafton and Lord North. 1768.

E The King's Ministry. 1768—1782. *The King his own minister.* Pp. 749—758, and 761, 762.

1. The King's Policy at home. Pp. 749—752.

- a *The Middlesex election.* Wilkes declared incapable of sitting in Parliament *although returned by the people.* Wilkes three times returned, and rejected ; his opponent admitted to the House, although not returned. Indignation of the people ; "the House of Commons do not represent the people." Letters of Junius, an anonymous writer (possibly Sir Philip Francis). Failure of the prosecution. 1768.
- b Rejection of Chatham's Reform Bill to increase the County members. Agitation produced by the Middlesex election and the prosecution of Junius ; first appearance of *public meetings* as a means of political influence. 1768.
- c Attempt to stop the publication of Parliamentary debates : dropped in consequence of public opposition.

Effects of this tacit permission.

- 1 Greater responsibility of members to constituents.
- 2 Greater national interest in public affairs.
- 3 Greater dignity of the press. Appearance of the great English newspapers at this time—*e.g.* the *Morning Chronicle*, the *Morning Post*, the *Morning Herald*, the *Times*.

2. The King's Colonial Policy. Pp. 752—754.

- a The Government alarmed by the attitude of the colonists, withdraw all import duties except that on tea. **May 1, 1770.**
- b The Anti-Tea-duty riot at Boston. **December 13, 1773.**
- c The port of *Boston* closed against commerce, **June, 1774**, and the rioters ordered to England for trial. Massachusetts deprived of its charter for petitioning in favour of its constitution.
- d A Congress of the Colonies meets at Philadelphia, **September 5, 1774** ; Massachusetts refuses to accept the charges of the English Government.
- e *The King's Ministry* rejects the Reconciliation Bill prepared by Chatham and Franklin, containing,
 - 1 Repeal of the Acts.
 - 2 Abandonment of claim to taxation.

- f* Invitation to colonists to deliberate how they may best contribute to the payment of the public debt.
3. The War of Independence. 1775—1782. Pp. 754—758.
- a* George Washington commander of the colonial army. "The man first in war, first in peace, first in the hearts of his fellow-countrymen."
 - b* The battle of *Bunker's Hill*, June 17, 1775, and siege of Boston by the colonists. Evacuation of Boston by the English, March, 1776.
 - c* Expulsion of the Governors from the Southern States, 1775. Colonial invasion of Canada under Arnold. 1776. *Declaration of American Independence*. "The King of England has shown himself unfit to be the ruler of a free people." July 4, 1776.
 - d* English victory at *Long Island*, July, 1776. Burgoyne attempts to seize the line of the *Hudson* and isolate *New England*, and Howe marches on *Philadelphia*. Washington evacuates *Philadelphia*, holds the camp at *Valley Forge* against Howe all winter. 1776—1777.
 - e* *Capitulation of Burgoyne at Saratoga*, October 17, 1777.
 - f* The last efforts and death of Chatham. April, 1778.
 - 1 Proposal of a Federal Union between England and the Colonies during Howe's successes, 1776; rejected by the King.
 - 2 French alliance with the colonists after Saratoga; despair of England. Chatham protests against the surrender of America, and is borne home to die. April 7, 1778.
 - g* *France* and *Spain* join with the colonists, 1778. Revival of the English spirit; defence of *Gibraltar* from 1779 to 1782; successes in America under Cornwallis, capture of *Charlestown*, 1780; opposition by sea to the *French*, *Spanish*, and *Dutch* fleets.
 - h* End of the war. Capitulation of Cornwallis at *York Town* in Virginia. October 19, 1781.
4. The treaties of Paris and Versailles. Pp. 761, 762.
- a* Disaffection of the Protestant Volunteers in Ireland; claim of Irish independence. 1779.
 - b* Spain claims *Gibraltar*; France, all *Indian* possessions except *Bengal*; as the price of peace.
 - c* England saved by Admiral Rodney's defeat of the *Spanish* fleet off Cape S. Vincent, and the *French* fleet in the East Indies, April 12, 1782, and by the repulse of the allies before *Gibraltar*. September, 1782.

- d* The treaties of Paris and Versailles, yielding Minorca and Florida to *Spain*, and acknowledging the independence of the United States. **September, 1783.**

F England and India. Pp. 758—761. (See Macaulay's Essays on Clive and Hastings.)

1. British rule over Southern India secured by the victory of Wandewash over Lally the French governor of Pondicherry, by Colonel Eyre Coote. **1760.**
2. Clive's organisation.
 - a* The Company's servants forbidden to trade privately or to accept presents. **1765.**
 - b* The Company obtain a warrant from Delhi to collect and administer the revenues of Bengal, Orissa, and Bahar.
3. Regulation Act of **1773**, carried by Lord North, establishing a Governor-General and Supreme Court of Judicature.
4. Trial of Clive ; censure of Indian misgovernment ; vote of thanks to Clive personally. **1773.**
5. Warren Hastings. Inauguration of a deliberate policy for subjecting India to England.
 - a* Abolition of the government of native Bengal princes, and organisation of Bengal.
 - b* The Rohilla War undertaken to crush what might be a nucleus for future resistance.
 - c* The Mahratta War. **1779.**
 - d* Descent of Hyder Ali on the Carnatic, **1780.** Peace made with the Mahrattas, and Hyder Ali defeated at Porto Novo by Eyre Coote. **July, 1781.**
 - e* Material results of Hastings' government.
 - 1 The annexation of Benares. **1780.**
 - 2 The reduction of Oude.
 - 3 The appearance of English armies in Central India.
 - 4 The defeat of rival powers, such as Hyder Ali.

G The Second Pitt. 1783—1789. Pp. 762—782, and 787—791.

1. Effects of the American War upon England. Pp. 762, 763.
 - a* Increased vigour and industrial activity.
 - b* England no longer a mere European but a colonizing power, *a mother of nations.*
2. The Rockingham Ministry. Pp. 763, 764.
 - a* Discontents in *Ireland* appeased by the repeal of Poyning's Act (giving British Parliament legislative power over Ireland). **1782.**
 - b* Negotiations with America begun.

- c* Reform Bill, disqualifying revenue officers and others, paid by the Crown, from sitting in Parliament, accompanied by *economical* reforms; politically it diminishes the power of Crown over Parliament and *puts an end to direct bribery of members*: otherwise inoperative.
- d* Death of Rockingham. **July, 1783.** Treaty of Paris concluded by his successor, Lord Shelburne. **September, 1783.**
- 3. The coalition of Fox and North overthrown by the rejection of Fox's India Bill, transferring the government of India to seven Commissioners. **1783.**

Defects of the Bill.

- a* Commissioners likely to be deficient in practical knowledge.
- b* Absence of link between Commissioners and the Ministry, and thus freedom from Parliamentary control.
- c* Danger of giving more power to the House of Commons while unreformed, and therefore not responsible to the nation.
- 4. Pitt, First Lord of the Treasury, **December, 1783**, at first with a minority in the Commons, then with a majority after the elections of **1784**. Pp. 764—766.

a Pitt's India Bill.

- 1 Acts of the Directors to be approved or annulled by *Board of Control*.
- 2 Practically the powers of the Directors transferred to a *Secret Committee* of themselves, and the powers of the Board exercised by its President.

Advantages of the scheme.

- 1 The President in effect a Secretary of State for India; *the administration of India made a part of the system of English government*.
- 2 Practical knowledge supplied by the members of Secret Committee.
- b* England and India.
 - 1 Increased interest in the natives, and desire to secure their just government produced by the rival Bills, and shown in the prosecution of Hastings. **1786.**
 - 2 Career of Hastings in India.
 - (*a*) Selling of British troops to crush the Rohillas.
 - (*b*) Extortion of money from the Rajah of Benares and Begums of Oude.
 - (*c*) Straining of law to secure the execution of Nuncomar.

ANALYSIS OF THE HISTORY

- (d) Promotion of Impey to secure his acquiescence.
- c The Prosecution of Hastings marks the end of illegal rule in British India. 1786.
5. Character and Work of William Pitt. (See Macaulay's Essay in his volume of Writings and Speeches.)
- a Pitt's Character. P. 767.
- Simplicity, reforming energy, wide humanity; "*to suppose any nation can be unalterably the enemy of another is weak and childish.*"
- b Pitt's Finance Policy. Pp. 768, 769, and 771.
- 1 Industrial progress of the nation.
- (a) Invention of the spinning-machine by *Arkwright*, 1768; of the spinning-jenny by Hargreaves, 1764; of the mule by Crompton, 1776. Consequent growth of Lancashire.
- (b) Improvement of communication by highways and canals.
- (c) Watt's application of steam to machinery. 1785.
- (d) Extension and improvement of agriculture.
- 2 Modern political economy founded by Adam Smith in the "*Wealth of Nations.*" 1776.
- (a) Labour the one source of wealth. All attempts to force labour into artificial channels hurtful to wealth.
- (b) The "*Wealth of Nations*" the groundwork of Pitt's policy.
- 3 Pitt's Financial Measures.
- (a) Reduction of custom-duties to check smuggling. Revival of excise as a means of taxation.
- (b) Attempt to establish free-trade between England and Ireland "*to draw what remained of the shattered empire together.*" 1785. Defeated by Grattan and the Irish Episcopalian Protestant landowners combining with the Whigs.
- (c) Treaty of commerce with France, establishing freedom of residence (without passports) and of trade between the two countries. 1787.
- c Pitt's Reform Policy. Pp. 770 and 791.
- 1 Attempt to reform the House of Commons by transferring the members of decayed boroughs to the counties: defeated by the Whigs; Pitt "*terribly disappointed and beat.*" 1785.
- 2 The reform of the House of Lords by Liberal

creation of Peers, making the House *the stronghold not of blood but of property.*

d Pitt's Irish Policy. Pp. 787—791.

1 History of Ireland since the capitulation of Limerick. 1691.

- (a) Political power confined to the Episcopalian Protestants, *a twelfth of the population.*
- (b) The Episcopalian aristocracy impatient of the control of the English Parliament. Demand for Independence made by Grattan and Flood and backed by the Protestant Volunteers, 1779; granted by Lord Rockingham, 1782.
- (c) Ireland from 1782 to 1800: "*a corrupt aristocracy, a ferocious commonalty, a distracted government, a divided people.*"

2 Pitt's Early Policy.

- (a) Free trade between England and Ireland; rejected by Grattan and the Protestant landowners. 1785.
- (b) Bill for *Catholic Emancipation* urged on the Irish Parliament. 1792.

3 Disturbances in Ireland.

- (a) Formation of the *United Irishmen* (among the Protestants of Ulster) to set up an independent republic; of the "*Defenders*" and "*Peep-o'-day Boys*" (among the Catholic peasantry); of the *Orange Societies* (among the landowners).
- (b) Outrages by the Protestants, 1796, 1797; supported by the Irish Parliament.
- (c) Roman Catholic revolt and atrocities in retaliation; the revolt crushed at Vinegar Hill. June 21, 1798.
- (d) "The bigoted fury of the Irish Protestants." Pitt resolves to put an end to the tragedy of Independence.

4 The Union.

- (a) One hundred Irish members to sit in the *United House of Commons*, twenty-eight temporal and four spiritual peers in the *United House of Lords*.
- (b) Commerce freed from all restrictions, and taxation distributed. January 1, 1801.

5 Religious Emancipation.

- (a) Pitt proposes
 - (1) To remove all religious tests limiting civil rights (emancipating the Presbyterians as well as the Catholics).

- (2) To give a Government grant to the Presbyterians and the Catholics.
- (3) To introduce commutation of tithes.
- (b) The scheme defeated by the opposition of the King. "I count any man my personal enemy who proposes any such measure." *Resignation of Pitt. 1801.*

c Pitt's Foreign Policy. Pp. 772—782.

- 1 The state of Europe.
 - (a) Government tending to a pure despotism.
 - (b) Wide diffusion of intelligence; hence the enlightened rulers and statesmen of the eighteenth century (Frederick the Great, Joseph II. of Austria, Turgot).
- 2 The state of France. Pp. 773, 774.
 - (a) Power centralized in the Crown: the nobles in possession of social privileges without *political* responsibility.
 - (b) Intelligence of the middle class; activity of the literary class in popularizing English ideas (*Montesquieu, Voltaire*) and spreading conceptions of humanity (*Rousseau*). Hence the eagerness of the French to assist the Colonies in the War of Independence.
 - (c) Increasing financial embarrassments. Summoning of the States-General and destruction of the Bastille. 1789. "*How much is this the greatest event that ever happened in the world, and how much the best.*"
- 3 Pitt and the Revolution. Pp. 774—782.
 - (a) Conversion of the States-General into a *National Assembly*; abolition of the privileges of the nobles and the Church; a new constitution forced on Lewis XVI. 1790.
 - (b) Alarm of the more Conservative Englishmen fomented by *Burke*.
 - (c) Burke's political influence and attitude to the Revolution.
 - (1) The first orator who deals with the *philosophy of politics*. Reform necessary, but only as the natural outcome of natural development; hence his antagonism to the Revolution.
 - (2) Failing to move Parliament, he appeals to the national love of order by the "*Reflections on the French Revolution.*" October, 1790.

- (3) Encourages the emigrant French Princes at Coblenz. "Be alarmists! diffuse terror."
- (d) Pitt's desire to remain on friendly terms with the French and to leave them free to reform themselves.
- (1) The French nation refuses to assist Spain in expelling the English from *Nookta Sound* (in California). Pitt acknowledges their friendliness. 1790.
- (2) Pitt's project for an alliance of France and England for the defence of Turkey and Poland from Russia and Prussia. 1789, 1790.
- (3) The Conference of Pillnitz. August, 1790. Owing to the neutrality of England, the Emperor and King of Prussia refuse actual military aid to the emigrant Princes, only issuing a vague invitation to the European Powers.
- (4) The French nation, irritated by the invitation of Pillnitz, declares war on the Emperor. April, 1792. *Pitt meanwhile reduces the English military forces, and hinders Holland from joining against France.*
- (5) Progress of matters in France.
 - (a) *The Tenth of August*; suspension and imprisonment of Lewis XVI. 1792.
 - (b) End of the Revolution, and re-establishment of despotism—of the Mob and Commune of Paris—of the Directory—of Buonaparte.
 - (c) The September massacres.
 - (d) The French Convention attacks Holland. "*All governments are our enemies, all peoples are our allies.*" 1792.
 - (e) Execution of Lewis XVI. January, 1793.
- (6) Pitt, pledges himself to abstain from war against France, if France will respect the independence of other nations. December, 1792. *France declares war against England.* February, 1793.

H The War with France. 1793—1802. Pp. 783—797.

1. France and the Coalition. 1793—1797. Pp. 783—785.

a Pitt's power ceases as soon as the war begins.

- 1 Pitt driven by the weakness of the English army to be Paymaster of the Coalition, and by the increase of public burdens to undo his own work.
- 2 Pitt, at first opposed to the war, shares for a time in the popular panic. The suspension of the Habeas Corpus Act. The Scottish martyrs (now commemorated by an obelisk in the Calton burying-ground, Edinburgh). 1794. Cessation of the panic seen in the acquittal of Horne Tooke. 1794.

b Victories of the French owing to the greed of Austria and Prussia in attacking Poland, and the union of the French nation produced by the fall of Robespierre. June 28, 1794.

- 1 Suppression of the revolts in Brittany and the south. The English driven from *Toulon* by Napoleon Buonaparte. 1794.
- 2 Victory of the French at *Fleurus*. June 26, 1794. The French masters of *Flanders*.
- 3 *Spain* and *Sardinia* compelled to sue for peace. The French enter *Amsterdam*. March, 1795. Submission of *Holland*.
- 4 The French in Italy under Buonaparte. Submission of Austria, and treaty of *Campo Formio*, the Austrian Netherlands and the Milanese ceded to France. French annexation of *Piedmont* and *Savoy*. 1797.

2. The English Naval Victories. England at last alone in the war. 1797—1799. Pp. 785, 786.

- a* Victory of Lord Howe over the French fleet off Brest. June 1, 1794—"The First of June."
- b* Victory of Admiral Jervis over the Spanish fleet (forced to join the French) off Cape S. Vincent, February 14, 1797. "*Westminster Abbey or victory*."
- c* Victory of Admiral Duncan over the Dutch fleet (forced to join the French) off Camperdown. October 11, 1797.
- d* Destruction of the French fleet in Aboukir Bay by Admiral Nelson. August 1, 1798. *The Battle of the Nile*.

3. The Second Coalition. 1799, 1800. Pp. 787 and 794.

- a* Buonaparte checked before *Acre* by Sir Sydney Smith; failure of his Syrian campaign. 1799.
- b* The French driven out of Italy by the Russians under

Suwarow, and the Rhineland by the Archduke Charles; failure of the English attempt to recover Holland. 1799.

c Fall of the Directory; Buonaparte, First Consul of the Republic. Rejection of his offers of peace by England.

d French victory at *Marengo*. French frontiers extended to the Rhine. 1800.

e Surrender of Malta to the English, giving them the command of the Mediterranean: indignation of Russia; *armed neutrality* of the Northern Powers (Russia, Sweden, Denmark) against the *right of search* exercised by England to prevent importation of munitions of war into France. 1800.

f First Battle of *Copenhagen*, 1802; Denmark detached from the Armed Neutrality; "*the brothers of Englishmen the Danes*." 1802.

g Assassination of Czar Paul, and abandonment of the Armed Neutrality.

I The Addington Ministry and the Peace of Amiens. Pp. 794, 795.

1. Pitt resigns, owing to the King's opposition to his Irish Religious Emancipation Bill. February, 1801.
2. Defeat of the French projects in the East by General Abercromby's victory at *Aboukir Bay*. March 21, 1801.
3. Buonaparte makes peace with the Empire at Luneville, by which the French frontiers are extended to the Rhine, 1801, and with the English at Amiens, "*of which everybody is glad, and nobody proud*." March, 1802. Based on terms of mutual restitution.

K The War against Buonaparte. 1803—1815. Pp. 795—811.

1. The War to the Death of Pitt. Pp. 795—798.

a Buonaparte's ambition to be master of the western world.

The means at his disposal.

- 1 The new social vigour derived from the Revolution.
- 2 The centralized system of government handed down from the monarchy.
- 3 The craving for public order and the love of glory.
- 4 The absence of divisions caused by the recall of the Church and the exiles.

b Declaration of war between England and France. May, 1803. All classes of Englishmen united for the war.

c Buonaparte's indirect attack on England in India foiled

by the defeat of the Mahrattas at Assaye by Arthur Wellesley. **September 23, 1803.**

d Buonaparte's direct attack on England. A camp formed at Boulogne.

1 Coalition formed between England, Russia, Austria, and Sweden to deliver Italy and the Low Countries from France.

2 Fear of French invasion removed by the victory of *Trafalgar*. **October 21, 1805.** "*England has saved herself by her courage, she will save Europe by her example.*"

3 The Coalition crushed by the French victory over the Russians and Austrians at *Austerlitz*. **October 18, 1805.** "*Pitt's Austerlitz look.*" "*My country! How I leave my country!*" **January 23, 1806.**

2. The Grenville Ministry. "The Ministry of all the Talents" (Fox, Erskine, Lord Howick (Earl Grey), &c.) **1806.** P. 798.

a The French victory of *Jena* and conquest of Northern Germany. **October 14, 1806.**

b The death of Fox. **September 13.**

c Napoleon attempts by the Berlin and Milan decrees to ruin the British carrying trade. **November 21, 1806,** and **December 17, 1807.** The English reply by *Orders in Council* compelling neutrals trading with the coasts under blockade to touch at some British port and pay British duty first. **January, 1807.**

d Fall of the Ministry due to their liberal domestic policy.

1 The abolition of the Slave Trade. **February, 1807.**

2 Proposals for Catholic Emancipation.

3. The Portland Ministry with Canning as Foreign Secretary. **1807—1809.** The first of a series of Tory Ministries. **1807—1830.** Pp. 798—801.

a Europe, except England, at Napoleon's feet.

1 *Russia* forced to the Peace of Tilsit by the defeat of Eylau, and induced to alliance with Napoleon in hopes of help to the conquest of Turkey. **July 7, 1807.**

2 Attempt of Napoleon to use the *Russian, Swedish,* and *Danish* fleets against the English; foiled by the Second Battle of *Copenhagen* and the capture by the English of the Danish fleet. **September 2—October 20, 1807.**

3 Kingdom of *Holland* given to Napoleon's brother *Lewis*, *Westphalia* to his brother *Jerome*, *Spain* and *Naples* to his brother *Joseph*. **1808.**

- b* Resistance of the *Spanish Nation* supported by English aid under Sir John Moore and Wellesley.
 - 1 Early successes of the patriots in Andalusia, and of the English in Portugal. Battle of *Vimiera*, and capitulation of the French army at *Cintra*. **August 30, 1808.**
 - 2 Appearance of Napoleon in Spain; French capture of *Zaragoza*, and death of Moore at *Corunna*. **January 16, 1809.**
 - 3 Dismay in England; firmness of Canning and Wellesley. "Portugal may be defended against any force which the French can bring against it." Soult driven from *Portugal*; the French in Spain defeated at *Talavera*. **July 26—28, 1809.**
 - 4 *Austria* once more driven to submit by the defeat of *Wagram*, and failure of the English attempt to deliver *Antwerp*. The disasters at *Walcheren*. **July—November, 1809.** The Treaty of Schönbrunn between Napoleon and Austria.
- 4. The Perceval Ministry. 1809—1812. Pp. 801—804, and 809.
 - a* Fall of the Canning Ministry owing to the disasters at *Walcheren*. Duel between Canning and Castle-reagh. **September, 1809.**
 - b* Perceval throws on Wellesley (*Wellington*) the responsibility of continuing the Peninsular War. Wellington accepts it; defends himself during the winter against Massena in the lines of *Torres Vedras* (1810), and forces him to retire from *Portugal*. **May, 1811.**
 - c* The American War. 1812—1814.
 - 1 America passes a Non-Intercourse Act with England and France (**May, 1808**), being irritated at their restrictions on trade. Napoleon offers concessions, the Perceval Ministry refuses any. **1811.**
 - 2 Further quarrel with reference to English "right of search"; finally America declares war. **June, 1812.**
 - 3 Subsequent history of the war.
 - (*a*) American successes at sea (1812) and temporary American conquest of *Upper Canada*. **1813.**
 - (*b*) English capture of Washington; the public buildings burnt; *few more shameful acts are recorded in our history*. **August, 1814.**
 - (*c*) The struggle closed by the peace of 1814.
- 5. The Liverpool Ministry formed after the assassination of Perceval. **May 11, 1812.** Pp. 804—807 and 809—811.

- a* Napoleon's power at its height.
- b* The War in Russia. 1812, 1813.
 - 1 Russia, jealous of the French occupation of the northern coasts, refuses to suspend trade with England.
 - 2 Napoleon invades Russia; enters Moscow in triumph, is burnt out (October, 1812), and loses almost his entire army in the retreat. 1812, 1813.
- c* The War in Spain.
 - 1 The best French soldiers withdrawn for the Russian campaign.
 - 2 Wellington on the aggressive. Captures *Ciudad Rodrigo*, January 19, and *Badajoz*, March 16, crushes Marmont at *Salamanca*, July 22, 1812. Falls back on Portugal in winter.
 - 3 Battle of *Vittoria*; the French driven across the Pyrenees. June 21, 1813.
- d* State of the Country.
 - 1 The war of classes—rich and poor, employers and employed—to be dated from these years of war.
 - (*a*) *Great increase of wealth*, due to the predominance of the English fleet, and English occupation of French, Spanish, and Dutch colonies, *but partial distribution*.
 - (*b*) Unwholesome prospect of agriculture. Wheat at famine prices; no supply from the Continent or America. 1812—1814.
 - (*c*) Small trades ruined by introduction of machinery; hence the Luddite (machine-breaking) riots, 1811, 1812.
 - (*d*) Increase of public burdens, poverty and crime.
 - 2 Revival of Reform.
 - (*a*) Appearance of the *Edinburgh Review* (the organ of the Young Reformers—Brougham, Jeffrey, Sidney Smith, Mackintosh). 1802.
 - (*b*) Jeremy Bentham. 1747—1832. "The aim of political action is *the greatest happiness of the greatest number*."
 - (*c*) Sir Francis Burdett's efforts to reform the House of Commons, "*a part of our fellow-subjects collected together by means which it is not necessary to describe*." 1809.
 - (*d*) Catholic Emancipation adopted by the Commons though rejected by the Lords. 1812.
 - 3 Fall of Napoleon. 1813, 1814.

- (a) Napoleon, with the main body of French army, driven back to the Elbe by the Prussians and Russians.
- (b) Napoleon collects a fresh army at *Maina*, defeats the Russians and Prussians at *Lutzen* and *Bautzen*. **May, 1814.**
- (c) The French driven out of Spain by the battle of *Vittoria*, **June 21, 1813**, in spite of Soult's attempt to regain the mountain passes; *the Battles of the Pyrenees*, **July 27—30, 1813**; English capture of S. Sebastian, **August 31**, of Pampluna, **October 31**; Victory of the *Bidassoa*, and advance of Wellington into France. **October.**
- (d) Overthrow of Napoleon in the "*Völkerschlacht*" at *Leipzig*. **October.** Advance of the Allies into France. **December 31, 1813.**
- (e) Soult defeated by Wellington at *Orthez*, **February 27**; *Toulouse*, **April 10, 1814.** Surrender of Paris to the Allies, **March 31, 1814.** Napoleon permitted to retain the imperial title and island of Elba.

4 Return of Napoleon. Pp. 809—811.

- (a) Congress of Vienna. Claim of Russia to annex Poland and of Prussia to annex Saxony opposed by England, Austria, and France. **January 15, 1815.**
- (b) Napoleon lands in France, **March 1**, enters Paris, **March 15, 1815.** Beginning of "*the Hundred Days*." Napoleon, "as the general enemy and disturber of the world, abandoned to public justice."
- (c) An English army despatched to the Netherlands; Wellington's plan to unite with the Prussians and enter France by Mons and Namur, leaving the Austrians and Russians to advance by Belfort and Alsace.
- (d) Napoleon advances into Belgium; separates Wellington, at *Quatrebras*, from Blücher, at *Ligny*. **June 16, 1815.** Wellington retreats from *Quatrebras* on *Waterloo*.
- (e) *Battle of Waterloo*, **June 18, 1815.** (For an account of the battle see "*Waterloo*," Roman, par MM. Erckmann-Chatrian, and Colonel Chesney's *Waterloo Lectures*). "The unbroken English squares;" compare the battles of *Senlac* and *Falkirk*.

- 5 Second abdication of Napoleon, **June 22**. End of the *Hundred Days*, and entry of the Allies into Paris, **July 6, 1815**.

Summary of Events.

From the Battle of Waterloo, **June 18, 1815**, to the fall of the Gladstone Ministry, **February, 1874**. Pp. 812—820.

A State of England after the War. 1815—1822.

1. Exhaustion and discontent produced by
 - a* heavy *taxation*, *debt* of eight hundred millions ;
 - b* depression of *manufactures*—the demand unequal to the supply.
 - c* attempt of landowners to keep up the price of corn by restricting importation. 1815.
 - d* *disbanding of the forces*, revival of the *Luddite* (machine-breaking) riots, prevalence of crime.
2. Opposition of Lord Castlereagh and the Ministry to reform. Hence,
 - a* First appearance of the "*Radical*" party.
 - b* The general discontent breaks out in disaffection and plots,—*Peterloo*, 1819 ; Cato-street Conspiracy, 1820—is increased by the trial of Queen Caroline.

B The Canning Administration. 1822—1827.

1. Canning's Foreign Policy
 - a* breaks with the *Holy Alliance* (formed (by Austria, Russia, Prussia) for the suppression of liberal movements) ;
 - b* lays down the principle of non-interference with the internal affairs of other countries.
2. Canning's Home Policy paves the way for *Catholic Emancipation* and the *Repeal of the Corn Laws*.
3. Treaty settled by Canning between Great Britain and Russia to stop the Turkish cruelties in Greece. Death of *Liverpool* and *Canning*, 1827 ; victory of *Navarino* over the Turkish fleet, in defence of the Greeks of the Morea, 1827. A Tory Ministry under *Wellington* and *Peel*, 1828.

C Reform.

1. Wellington consents to carry through the Lords a Bill for *Catholic Emancipation*, 1829.
2. Revolution in France. Expulsion of Charles X. ; Louis-Philippe "a constitutional King." 1830. Demands for Reform resisted by Wellington ; fall of his Ministry.
3. *Earl Grey* and the *Reform Bill*. 1830—1832. The first Whig Ministry for twenty years. The Reform Bill.

- a* 143 seats transferred from rotten or decayed boroughs to counties and large towns.
- b* The *Borough franchise*, extended to 10*l.* householders. The *County franchise* to leaseholders and copyholders. The Bill passed by a specially elected House of Commons, 1831; finally, after much agitation, by the Lords, June 7, 1832.
- 4. General results of the Whig Ministry under Grey and Melbourne. 1831—1841.
 - a* *Abolition of Colonial Slavery.* 1833.
 - b* Abolition of commercial monopoly of the East India Company. 1833.
 - c* New Poor Law Act. 1834.
 - d* Restoration of the early right of self-government by the Municipal Corporations Act. 1835.
 - e* Act for Tithe Commutation, and Civil Marriages Act. 1836.
 - f* Inauguration of a system of national education, by annual grants (1834) and creation of Educational Committee of Privy Council (1839).

D Sir Robert Peel.

- 1. Difficulties of the Whig Government.
 - a* Bad harvests leading to national discontent and demands for the "People's Charter" (universal suffrage, vote by ballot, annual Parliaments, abolition of property qualification for Members, and payment of Members). 1839.
 - b* Quarrels between Upper and Lower Canada. 1837.
 - c* The *Spanish War*; quadruple alliance between *England, France, Spain, and Portugal* to support Donna Maria and Isabella. 1834.
 - d* The *Chinese War* for the introduction of opium. 1840.
 - e* The *Affghan War*; defeat and destruction of the English retreating from Cabul. 1841.
- 2. Fall of the Melbourne Ministry. Formation of a "*Conservative*" Ministry under Peel. 1841.
 - a* Peel's Foreign Policy.
 - 1 Peace with China partially establishing free trade.
 - 2 Reduction of Cabul and struggle with the Sikhs ending in the annexation of Scinde. 1846.
 - b* Peel's Home Policy.
 - 1 Upholds the Corn Laws. Formation of the Anti-Corn Law League. 1839.
 - 2 Peel, in spite of his previous opposition, forced by

failure of the potato crop in Ireland, and the bad harvest, *to repeal the Corn Laws*. 1846. Peel driven from office by the resentment of the Conservatives.

E The Russell Ministry. 1847—1852.

1. In Home affairs : A Ministry of Free Trade, "*buying in the cheapest market and selling in the dearest.*"
2. External Events : Insurrection in Ireland under Smith O'Brien, crushed by a few police ; demonstration of the Chartists in London ; victory of Goojerat over the Sikhs, by Lord Gough, and annexation of the Punjaub by Lord Dalhousie. 1848.
3. First International Exhibition. 1851.

F The Aberdeen Ministry. 1853—1855.

1. Outbreak of the Crimean War. Battle of the *Alma*, September 20, and siege of Sebastopol : Russian attack on the English at *Balaklava*, October 25 — "*The charge of the Light Brigade*"; and at *Inkermann*, November 5, 1854. "*The soldiers' battle.*"
2. Indignation at the sufferings of the troops. Fall of the Ministry. January, 1855.

G The Palmerston Ministries. 1855—1858, and 1859—1865.

1. Capture of Sebastopol, September, 1855; and Treaty of Paris, limiting the power of Russia on the Black Sea, and so depriving her of the sole protectorate of the Christian provinces of Turkey. 1856.
2. Mutiny of the native troops in Bengal, 1857. Massacre of "English men, women, and children" at Cawnpore ; defence of Lucknow by Havelock, and relief by Sir Colin Campbell. Suppression of the revolt ; government of India transferred from the Company to the Crown.
3. Creation of the Volunteer Force owing to the violent language of the French army. 1858. Conservative Ministry under Lord Derby, 1858. Palmerston restored to power, 1859.
4. The Home Policy of Palmerston's Second Ministry—*inaction*.
The Foreign Policy—non-intervention in three great wars.
The French and Austrian War, ending in the creation of Italy. 1859.
The Civil War in America, causing the cotton famine in Lancashire. 1861—1865.
The attack of Austria and Prussia upon Denmark. 1864.

H The New Reformers. 1865—1873.

1. The Conservative Ministry introduces a Reform Bill. August, 1867.

a Borough franchise extended to all ratepayers; to lodgers occupying rooms of 10*l.* value.

County franchise reduced to 12*l.*

b Forty-six members withdrawn from English boroughs; twenty-five assigned to counties, the rest to Scotland and Ireland.

2. The Gladstone Ministry, including every section of the Liberal party. 1868—1873.

a Disestablishment and disendowment of the Protestant Episcopal Church in Ireland, 1869; Irish Land Bill, establishing tenant right, 1870.

b Abolition of purchase and reorganisation of the army. 1871.

c Abolition of compulsory Church rates, 1868; abolition of Tests, 1871.

d Furtherance of system of national education by establishment of School Boards, 1870.

e Introduction of voting by ballot as a protection against intimidation. 1872.

3. Re-action in the country. Fall of the Gladstone Ministry. 1874.

THE END.

LONDON :
R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS,
BREAD STREET HILL.

July 1878.

A CATALOGUE
OF
EDUCATIONAL BOOKS,

PUBLISHED BY
MACMILLAN AND CO.,
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON.

CLASSICAL.

ÆSCHYLUS—*THE EUMENIDES*. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ARISTOTLE—*AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC*. With Analysis, Notes and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 14s.

ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTIC ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A. Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

ARISTOPHANES—*THE BIRDS*. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s.

BELCHER—*SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR*, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Assistant Master in King's College School, London. New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d. Key, 1s. 6d.

BLACKIE—*GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES*. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

10,000. 7. 78.

CICERO—*THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION*. With Introduction and Notes. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A. Fellow and Classical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

THE ORATIONS OF CICERO AGAINST CATILINA. With Notes and an Introduction from the German of KARL HALM, with additions by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Owens College, Manchester. Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ACADEMICA OF CICERO. The Text revised and explained by JAMES REID, M.A., Assistant Tutor and late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

CICERO'S LETTERS. Translated by G. E. JEANS, Assistant-Master at Haileybury. [*Shortly*].

DEMOSTHENES—*ON THE CROWN*, to which is prefixed *ÆSCHINES AGAINST CTESIPHON*. The Greek Text with English Notes. By B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

ELLIS—*PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN*, for the use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

GOODWIN—*SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB*. By W. W. GOODWIN, Ph.D. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

GREENWOOD—*THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR*, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

HODGSON—*MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION*. A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. Fourth Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

HOMERIC DICTIONARY. For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr. G. Autenreith, with Additions and Corrections by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6s.

HOMER'S ODYSSEY—THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS. With a Commentary by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Part I. Books IX.—XII. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.

HORACE—THE WORKS OF HORACE, rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis, and Notes, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ODES OF HORACE IN A METRICAL PARAPHRASE. By R. M. HOVENDEN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s.

HORACE'S LIFE AND CHARACTER. An Epitome of his Satires and Epistles. By R. M. HOVENDEN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

WORD FOR WORD FROM HORACE. The Odes literally Versified. By W. T. THORNTON, C.B. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

JACKSON—FIRST STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. By BLOMFIELD JACKSON, M.A. Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

JEBB—Works by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow.

THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. 2 vols. 8vo. 25s.

THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS. Translated from a Revised Text, with Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

JUVENAL—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Vol. I. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Or Parts I. and II. 3s. 6a each.

LIVY, Books XXI., XXII. *HANNIBAL'S FIRST CAMPAIGN IN ITALY.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by the Rev. W. W. CAPES, Reader in Ancient History, Oxford. With Maps. Fcap. 8vo. [Shortly.]

LYSIAS—SELECT ORATIONS. Edited, with Notes, &c., by E. S. SHUCKBURGH. [In preparation.]

MARSHALL — A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS, classified according to the arrangement of Curtius' Greek Grammar. By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo. cloth. Third Edition. 1s.

MAYOR (JOHN E. B.)—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. Third Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE. Edited after HÜBNER, with large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

MAYOR (JOSEPH B.)—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d. Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, 3s. 6d. complete in one Vol. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

NIXON—PARALLEL EXTRACTS arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Classical Lecturer, King's College, London. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A FEW NOTES ON LATIN RHETORIC. With Tables and Illustrations. By J. E. NIXON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s.

PEILE (JOHN, M.A.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge, formerly Teacher of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge. Third and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

PLATO—*THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO*. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. Third Edition, with Vignette Portraits of Plato and Socrates, engraved by JEENS from an Antique Gem. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

PLAUTUS—*THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS*. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14s.

POTTS (A. W., M.A.)—*HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION*. By ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master in Rugby School; and Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

ROBY—*A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE*, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third Edition. Part I. containing:—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflections. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Part II.—Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

“Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country.”—*ATHENÆUM*.

RUST—*FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION*. By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A. of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. Fifth Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

RUTHERFORD—*A FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR*. By W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., Assistant Master of St. Paul's School, London. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s.

SALLUST—*CAII SALLUSTII CRISPI CATILINA ET JUGURTHA*. For use in Schools. With copious Notes. By C. MERIVALE, B.D. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d. Or separately, 2s. 6d. each.

TACITUS—*THE HISTORY OF TACITUS TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.* By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and a Map. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"A scholarly and faithful translation."—SPECTATOR.

THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA OF TACITUS. A Revised Text, English Notes, and Maps. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d. Or separately, 2s. each.

"A model of careful editing, being at once compact, complete, and correct, as well as neatly printed and elegant in style."—ATHENÆUM.

THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY. Translated into English by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Maps and Notes. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THE ANNALS. Translated, with Notes and Maps, by A. J. CHURCH and W. J. BRODRIBB. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE ANNALS. Book VI. By the same Editors. With Notes. [Nearly ready.]

TERENCE—*HAUTON TIMORUMENOS.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. With Translation, 4s. 6d.

THEOPHRASTUS—*THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS.* An English Translation from a Revised Text. With Introduction and Notes. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

"A very handy and scholarly edition."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

THRING—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

A CONSTRUING BOOK. Fcap 8vo. 2s. 6d.

THUCYDIDES—*BOOKS VI. AND VII.*, with Notes. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. By the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

VIRGIL—*THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE*, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6d.

"A more complete edition of Virgil in English it is scarcely possible to conceive than the scholarly work before us."—GLOBE.

WRIGHT—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

HELLENICA; OR, A HISTORY OF GREECE IN GREEK, as related by Diodorus and Thucydides; being a First Greek Reading Book, with explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. Third Edition with a Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; or, The Form and Use of Words in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME. An Easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages; being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes. Fifth Edition. With Vocabulary, 3s. 6d.

FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. Crown 8vo. 5s.

ATTIC PRIMER. Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A COMPLETE LATIN COURSE, comprising Rules with Examples, Exercises, both Latin and English, on each Rule, and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

XENOPHON—The Hellenica of Xenophon. Books I. and II. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Map, by H. HAILSTONE, B.A. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

MATHEMATICS.

AIRY—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal :—

ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Designed for the Use of Students in the Universities. With Diagrams. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINATION OF OBSERVATIONS. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS. With the Mathematical Elements of Music. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo. 9s.

A TREATISE OF MAGNETISM. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Crown 8vo. 9s. 6d.

AIRY (OSMUND)—*A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL OPTICS.* Adapted for the use of the Higher Classes in Schools. By OSMUND AIRY, B.A., one of the Mathematical Masters in Wellington College. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

BAYMA—*THE ELEMENTS OF MOLECULAR MECHANICS.* By JOSEPH BAYMA, S.J., Professor of Philosophy, Stonyhurst College. Demy 8vo. 10s. 6d.

BEASLEY—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLANE TRIGONOMETRY*. With Examples. By R. D. BEASLEY, M.A., Head Master of Grantham Grammar School. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

BLACKBURN (HUGH)—*ELEMENTS OF PLANE TRIGONOMETRY*, for the use of the Junior Class in Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. By HUGH BLACKBURN, M.A., Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d.

BOOLE—Works by G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., late Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Third and Revised Edition. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 14s.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Supplementary Volume. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. New Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON.

BROOK-SMITH (J.)—*ARITHMETIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE*. By J. BROOK-SMITH, M.A., LL.B., St. John's College, Cambridge; Barrister-at-Law; one of the Masters of Cheltenham College. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"A valuable Manual of Arithmetit of the Scientific kind. The best we have seen."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

CAMBRIDGE SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS and RIDERS WITH SOLUTIONS :—

1875—*PROBLEMS AND RIDERS*. By A. G. GREENHILL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

CANDLER—*HELP TO ARITHMETIC*. Designed for the use of Schools. By H. CANDLER, M.A., Mathematical Master of Uppingham School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

CHEYNE—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY THEORY.* By C. H. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S. With a Collection of Problems. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

CHRISTIE—*A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS*; with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method. By JAMES R. CHRISTIE, F.R.S., Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

CLIFFORD—*THE ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC.* An Introduction to the Study of Motion and Rest in Solid and Fluid Bodies. By A. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics at University College, London. Part I. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

CUMMING—*AN INTRODUCTION TO THE THEORY OF ELECTRICITY.* By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A., one of the Masters of Rugby School. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

CUTHBERTSON—*EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY.* By FRANCIS CUTHBERTSON, M.A., LL.D., Head Mathematical Master of the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

DALTON—Works by the Rev. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant Master of Eton College.

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ARITHMETIC. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

Answers to the Examples are appended.

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA. Part I. Second Edition. 18mo. 2s. Part II. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

DAY—*PROPERTIES OF CONIC SECTIONS PROVED GEOMETRICALLY. PART I., THE ELLIPSE*, with Problems. By the Rev. H. G. DAY, M.A., Head Master of Sedburgh Grammar School. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

DREW—*GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS*. By W. H. DREW, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 5s.

SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS IN DREW'S CONIC SECTIONS. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

EDGAR (J. H.) and PRITCHARD (G. S.)—*NOTE-BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY*. Containing Problems with help for Solutions. By J. H. EDGAR, M.A., Lecturer on Mechanical Drawing at the Royal School of Mines, and G. S. PRITCHARD. Third Edition, revised and enlarged. Globe 8vo. 3s.

FERRERS—Works by the Rev. N. M. FERRERS, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR CO-ORDINATES, the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors. Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SPHERICAL HARMONICS, AND SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH THEM. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

FROST—Works by PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Mathematical Lecturer of King's College.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. 8vo. 12s.

SOLID GEOMETRY. A New Edition, revised and enlarged, of the Treatise by FROST and WOLSTENHOLME. In 2 Vols. Vol. I. 8vo. 16s.

GODFRAY—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M.A., Mathematical Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge.

A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY, with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

HEMMING—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS*, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Second Edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo. 9s.

JACKSON — *GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS*. An Elementary Treatise in which the Conic Sections are defined as the Plane Sections of a Cone, and treated by the Method of Projection. By J. STUART JACKSON, M.A., late Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

JELLET (JOHN H.)—*A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF FRICTION*. By JOHN H. JELLET, B.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin; President of the Royal Irish Academy. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

JONES and CHEYNE—*ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES*. Progressively Arranged. By the Rev. C. A. JONES, M.A., and C. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S., Mathematical Masters of Westminster School. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

KELLAND and TAIT—*INTRODUCTION TO QUATERNIONS*, with numerous examples. By P. KELLAND, M.A., F.R.S.; and P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professors in the department of Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

KITCHENER—*A GEOMETRICAL NOTE-BOOK*, containing Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study of Geometry. For the use of Schools. By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., Mathematical Master at Rugby. Third Edition. 4to. 2s.

MAULT—*NATURAL GEOMETRY*: an Introduction to the Logical Study of Mathematics. For Schools and Technical Classes. With Explanatory Models, based upon the Tachymetrical Works of Ed. Lagout. By A. MAULT. 18mo. 1s. Models to Illustrate the above, in Box, 12s. 6d.

MERRIMAN — *ELEMENTS OF THE METHOD OF LEAST SQUARES*. By MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Ph.D. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

MILLAR—*ELEMENTS OF DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY*. By J. B. MILLAR, C.E., Assistant Lecturer in Engineering in Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. 6s.

MORGAN — *A COLLECTION OF PROBLEMS AND EXAMPLES IN MATHEMATICS*. With Answers. By H. A. Morgan, M.A., Sadlerian and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA. Edited by Prof. Sir W. THOMSON and Professor BLACKBURN. 4to. cloth. 31s. 6d.

"Undoubtedly the finest edition of the text of the 'Principia' which has hitherto appeared."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA, With Notes and Illustrations. Also a collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Third Edition. 8vo. 12s.

PARKINSON—Works by S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John's College, Cambridge.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS. For the Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes in Schools. With a Collection of Examples. Fifth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. cloth. 9s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON OPTICS. Third Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.

PHEAR—*ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS*. With Numerous Examples. By J. B. PHEAR, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth. 5s. 6d.

PIRIE—*LESSONS ON RIGID DYNAMICS*. By the Rev. G. PIRIE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s.

PUCKLE—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY*. With Numerous Examples and Hints for their Solution; especially designed for the Use of Beginners. By G. H. PUCKLE, M.A. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

RAWLINSON—*ELEMENTARY STATICS*, by the Rev. GEORGE RAWLINSON, M.A. Edited by the Rev. EDWARD STURGES, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

RAYLEIGH—*THE THEORY OF SOUND*. By LORD RAYLEIGH, M.A., F.R.S., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. In 2 Vols. 8vo. Vol. I. 12s. 6d. Vol. II. 12s. 6d.

REYNOLDS—*MODERN METHODS IN ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY*. By E. M. REYNOLDS, M.A., Mathematical Master in Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ROUTH—Works by EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, M.A., F.R.S., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. Peter's College, Cambridge; Examiner in the University of London.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DYNAMICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES. With numerous Examples. Third and enlarged Edition. 8vo. 21s.

STABILITY OF A GIVEN STATE OF MOTION, PARTICULARLY STEADY MOTION. Adams' Prize Essay for 1877. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

SMITH—Works by the Rev. BARNARD SMITH, M.A., Rector of Glaston, Rutland, late Fellow and Senior Bursar of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA, in their Principles and Application; with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers, with especial

SMITH *Continued*—

reference to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree. Thirteenth Edition, carefully revised. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"To all those whose minds are sufficiently developed to comprehend the simplest mathematical reasoning, and who have not yet thoroughly mastered the principles of Arithmetic and Algebra, it is calculated to be of great advantage."—*ATHENÆUM*.

"Mr. Smith's work is a most useful publication. The rules are stated with great clearness. The examples are well selected, and worked out with just sufficient detail, without being encumbered by too minute explanations: and there prevails throughout it that just proportion of theory and practice which is the crowning excellence of an elementary work."—*DEAN PEACOCK*.

ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"Admirably adapted for instruction, combining just sufficient theory with a large and well-selected collection of exercises for practice."—*JOURNAL OF EDUCATION*.

A KEY TO THE ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC. Crown 8vo. limp cloth. 2s. With Answers. 2s. 6d.

Or sold separately, Part I. 1s.; Part II. 1s.; Answers, 6d.

SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. 18mo. cloth. 3s.

Or sold separately, Parts I. and II. 10d. each; Part III. 1s.

KEYS TO SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. Parts I., II., and III., 2s. 6d. each.

SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR NATIONAL AND ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. 18mo. cloth. Or separately, Part I. 2d.; Part II. 3d.; Part III. 7d. Answers. 6d.

THE SAME, with Answers complete. 18mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

KEY TO SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 1s. 6d. The same, with Answers, 18mo. 2s. Answers, 6d.

SMITH Continued—

KEY TO EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, ITS PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATIONS, with numerous Examples, written expressly for Standard V. in National Schools. Third Edition. 18mo. cloth, sewed. 3d.

A CHART OF THE METRIC SYSTEM, on a Sheet, size 42 in. by 34 in. on Roller, mounted and varnished price 3s. 6d. Third Edition.

"We do not remember that ever we have seen teaching by a chart more happily carried out."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

Also a Small Chart on a Card, price 1d.

EASY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC, combining Exercises in Reading, Writing, Spelling, and Dictation. Part I. for Standard I. in National Schools. Crown 8vo. 9d.

"We should strongly advise every one to study carefully Mr. Barnard Smith's Lessons in Arithmetic, Writing, and Spelling. A more excellent little work for a first introduction to knowledge cannot well be written. Mr. Smith's larger Text-books on Arithmetic and Algebra are already most favourably known, and he has proved now that the difficulty of writing a text-book which begins *ab ovo* is really surmountable; but we shall be much mistaken if this little book has not cost its author more thought and mental labour than any of his more elaborate text-books. The plan to combine arithmetical lessons with those in reading and spelling is perfectly novel, and it is worked out in accordance with the aims of our National Schools; and we are convinced that its general introduction in all elementary schools throughout the country will produce great educational advantages."—WESTMINSTER REVIEW.

EXAMINATION CARDS IN ARITHMETIC. (Dedicated to Lord Sandon.) With Answers and Hints.

Standards I. and II. in box, 1s. Standards III., IV. and V., in boxes, 1s. each. Standard VI. in Two Parts, in boxes, 1s. each.

A and B papers, of nearly the same difficulty, are given so as to prevent copying, and the Colours of the A and B papers differ in each Standard, and from those of every other Standard, so that a master or mistress can see at a glance whether the children have the proper papers.

SNOWBALL — *THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY*; with the Construction and Use of Tables of Logarithms. By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. Eleventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

SYLLABUS OF PLANE GEOMETRY (corresponding to Euclid, Books I.—VI.). Prepared by the Association for the Improvement of Geometrical Teaching. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 1s.

TAIT and STEELE — *A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF A PARTICLE*. With numerous Examples. By Professor TAIT and Mr. STEELE. Fourth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 12s.

TEBAY — *ELEMENTARY MENSURATION FOR SCHOOLS*. With numerous Examples. By SEPTIMUS TEBAY, B.A., Head Master of Queen Elizabeth's Grammar School, Rivington. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

TODHUNTER — Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

TODHUNTER *Continued—*

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

ALGEBRA. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS. Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. For Schools and Colleges. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s.

KEY TO PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. Third Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY, as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections. With numerous Examples. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. With numerous Examples. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS APPLICATIONS. With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE DIMENSIONS. Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4s.

A TREATISE ON ANALYTICAL STATICS. With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

TODHUNTER *Continued*—

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PROBABILITY, from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace. 8vo. 18s.

RESEARCHES IN THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS, principally on the Theory of Discontinuous Solutions: an Essay to which the Adams Prize was awarded in the University of Cambridge in 1871. 8vo. 6s.

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF ATTRACTION, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH, from the time of Newton to that of Laplace. 2 vols. 8vo. 24s.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON LAPLACE'S, LAME'S, AND BESSEL'S FUNCTIONS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

WILSON (J. M.)—*ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY*. Books I. II. III. Containing the Subjects of Euclid's first Four Books. Following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Association. By J. M. WILSON, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College Cambridge, and Mathematical Master of Rugby School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS. With Appendices on Transversals and Harmonic Division. For the Use of Schools. By J. M. WILSON, M.A. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

WILSON (W. P.)—*A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS*. By W. P. WILSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. 9s. 6d.

WOLSTENHOLME—*A BOOK OF MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS*, on Subjects included in the Cambridge Course. By JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME, Fellow of Christ's College, sometime Fellow of St. John's College, and lately Lecturer in Mathematics at Christ's College. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

"Judicious, symmetrical, and well arranged."—GUARDIAN.

SCIENCE.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS.

ASTRONOMY, by the Astronomer Royal.

POPULAR ASTRONOMY. With Illustrations. By Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal. New Edition, 18mo. 4s. 6d.

Six lectures, intended "to explain to intelligent persons the principles on which the instruments of an Observatory are constructed, and the principles on which the observations made with these instruments are treated for deduction of the distances and weights of the bodies of the Solar System."

ASTRONOMY.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. With Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ, and numerous Illustrations. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. 5s. 6d.

"Full, clear, sound, and worthy of attention, not only as a popular exposition, but as a scientific 'Index.'"—*ATHENÆUM*.

QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. For the Use of Schools. By JOHN FORBES-ROBERTSON. 18mo. cloth limp. 1s. 6d.

PHYSIOLOGY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. By T. H. HUXLEY, F.R.S., Professor of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"Pure gold throughout."—*GUARDIAN*.

"Unquestionably the clearest and most complete elementary treatise on this subject that we possess in any language."—*WESTMINSTER REVIEW*.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued—*

QUESTIONS ON HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS. By T. ALCOCK, M.D. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

BOTANY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY. By D. OLIVER, F.R.S., F.L.S., Professor of Botany in University College, London. With nearly Two Hundred Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

CHEMISTRY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY, IN-ORGANIC AND ORGANIC. By HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations and Chromo-Litho of the Solar Spectrum, and of the Alkalies and Alkaline Earths. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"As a standard general text-book it deserves to take a leading place."—SPECTATOR.

"We unhesitatingly pronounce it the best of all our elementary treatises on Chemistry."—MEDICAL TIMES.

A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, prepared with Special Reference to the above, by T. E. Thorpe, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds. Adapted for the preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Professor ROSCOE. Fifth Edition, with Key, 18mo. 2s.

POLITICAL ECONOMY.

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS. By MILLICENT G. FAWCETT. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

"Clear, compact, and comprehensive."—DAILY NEWS.

"The relations of capital and labour have never been more simply or more clearly expounded."—CONTEMPORARY REVIEW.

LOGIC.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC; Deductive and Inductive, with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of Logical Terms. By W. STANLEY JEVONS, M.A. Professor of Logic in University College, London. New Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

"Nothing can be better for a school-book."—GUARDIAN.

"A manual alike simple, interesting, and scientific."—ATHENÆUM.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued—*

PHYSICS.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. By BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"The beau-ideal of a scientific text-book, clear, accurate, and thorough."
EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.

THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. By FRANCIS JONES, Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester. With Preface by Professor ROSCOE, and Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

ANATOMY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY. By ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. 18mo. 6s. 6d.

"It may be questioned whether any other work on anatomy contains in like compass so proportionately great a mass of information."—LANCET.

"The work is excellent, and should be in the hands of every student of human anatomy."—MEDICAL TIMES.

STEAM.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE. By JOHN PERRY, Bachelor of Engineering, Whitworth Scholar, &c., late Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College. With numerous Woodcuts and Numerical Examples and Exercises. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"The young engineer and those seeking for a comprehensive knowledge of the use, power, and economy of steam, could not have a more useful work, as it is very intelligible, well arranged, and practical throughout."—IRONMONGER.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By A. GEIKIE, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology, &c., Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

QUESTIONS ON THE SAME. 1s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued—***NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.**

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR BEGINNERS. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Part I. The Properties of Solid and Fluid Bodies. 18mo. 3s. 6d.
Part II. Sound, Light, and Heat. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

MANUALS FOR STUDENTS.

FLOWER (W. H.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTEOLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA. Being the substance of the Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons of England in 1870. By W. H. FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Hunterian Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Physiology. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

FOSTER and BALFOUR—THE ELEMENTS OF EMBRYOLOGY. By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S., and F. M. BALFOUR, M.A. Part I. crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

FOSTER and LANGLEY—A COURSE OF ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY. By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S., and J. N. LANGLEY, B.A. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

HOOKE (Dr.)—THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS. By Sir J. D. HOOKE, K.C.S.I., C.B., P.R.S., M.D., D.C.L. Second Edition, revised. Globe 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"Cannot fail to perfectly fulfil the purpose for which it is intended."—
LAND AND WATER.

"Certainly the fullest and most accurate manual of the kind that has yet appeared."—PALL MALL GAZETTE.

HUXLEY and MARTIN—A COURSE OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S., assisted by H. N. MARTIN, M.B., D.Sc. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"It is impossible for an intelligent youth, with this book in his hand, placing himself before any one of the organisms described, and carefully following the directions given, to fail to verify each point to which his attention is directed."—ATHENÆUM.

HUXLEY—PHYSIOGRAPHY. An Introduction to the Study of Nature. By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations, and Coloured Plates. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

OLIVER (Professor)—FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY. By DANIEL OLIVER, F.R.S., F.L.S., Keeper of the Herbarium and Library of the Royal Gardens, Kew, and Professor of Botany in University College, London. With numerous Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

"It contains a well-digested summary of all essential knowledge pertaining to Indian botany, wrought out in accordance with the best principles of scientific arrangement."—ALLEN'S INDIAN MAIL.

PARKER and BETTANY—THE MORPHOLOGY OF THE SKULL. By Professor PARKER and G. T. BETTANY. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Other volumes of these Manuals will follow.

NATURE SERIES.

THE SPECTROSCOPE AND ITS APPLICATIONS. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With Coloured Plate and numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS. By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S., D.C.L. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"We can most cordially recommend it to young naturalists."—*ATHE-NEUM*.

THE TRANSIT OF VENUS. By G. FORBES, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE COMMON FROG. By ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

POLARISATION OF LIGHT. By W. SPOTTISWOODE, F.R.S. With many Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ON BRITISH WILD FLOWERS CONSIDERED IN RELATION TO INSECTS. By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

NATURE SERIES *Continued*—**THE SCIENCE OF WEIGHING AND MEASURING, AND THE STANDARDS OF MEASURE AND WEIGHT.**

By H. W. CHISHOLM, Warden of the Standards. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE: a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

LIGHT: a Series of Simple, entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Light, for the Use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER and C. BARNARD. Crown 8vo, with numerous Illustrations. 2s. 6d.

Other volumes to follow.

BALL (R. S., A.M.)—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS. A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland. By R. S. BALL, A.M., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics in the Royal College of Science for Ireland. Royal 8vo. 16s.

BLANFORD—THE RUDIMENTS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY FOR THE USE OF INDIAN SCHOOLS; with a Glossary of Technical Terms employed. By H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S. New Edition, with Illustrations. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

FLEISCHER—A SYSTEM OF VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS. Translated, with Notes and Additions, from the second German Edition, by M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

FOSTER—A TEXT BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY. By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With Illustrations. New Edition, enlarged, with additional Illustrations and Plates. 8vo. 21s.

GORDON—AN ELEMENTARY BOOK ON HEAT. By J. E. H. GORDON, B.A., Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 2s.

MIALL—STUDIES IN COMPARATIVE ANATOMY. No. I.—The Skull of the Crocodile: a Manual for Students. By L. C. MIALI, Professor of Biology in the Yorkshire College and Curator of the Leeds Museum. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

NEWCOMB—*POPULAR ASTRONOMY*. By S. NEWCOMB, LL.D., Professor U.S. Naval Observatory. With 112 Illustrations and 5 Maps of the Stars. 8vo. 18s.

"It is unlike anything else of its kind, and will be of more use in circulating a knowledge of astronomy than nine-tenths of the books which have appeared on the subject of late years."—*Saturday Review*.

REULEAUX — *THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY*. Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21s.

ROSCOE and SCHORLEMMER—*CHEMISTRY*, A Complete Treatise on. By Professor H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., and Professor C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S. Vol. I.—The Non-Metallic Elements. With numerous Illustrations, and Portrait of Dalton. Medium 8vo. 21s. [Vol. II. in the press.]

SHANN—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON HEAT, IN RELATION TO STEAM AND THE STEAM-ENGINE*. By G. SHANN, M.A. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

WRIGHT—*METALS AND THEIR CHIEF INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS*. By C. ALDER WRIGHT, D.Sc., &c. Lecturer on Chemistry in St. Mary's Hospital Medical School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SCIENCE PRIMERS FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.

Under the joint Editorship of Professors HUXLEY, ROSCOE, and BALFOUR STEWART.

"These Primers are extremely simple and attractive, and thoroughly answer their purpose of just leading the young beginner up to the threshold of the long avenues in the Palace of Nature which these titles suggest."—*GUARDIAN*.

"They are wonderfully clear and lucid in their instruction, simple in style, and admirable in plan."—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

CHEMISTRY — By H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s. New Edition. With Questions.

"A very model of perspicacity and accuracy."—*CHEMIST AND DRUGGIST*.

SCIENCE PRIMERS *Continued*—

PHYSICS—By BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s. New Edition. With Questions.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—By ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology and Mineralogy at Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, with Questions. 18mo. 1s.

"Everyone of his lessons is marked by simplicity, clearness, and correctness."—*ATHENÆUM*.

GEOLOGY—By Professor GEIKIE, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

"It is hardly possible for the dullest child to misunderstand the meaning of a classification of stones after Professor Geikie's explanation."—*SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE*.

PHYSIOLOGY—By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"The book seems to us to leave nothing to be desired as an elementary text-book."—*ACADEMY*.

ASTRONOMY—By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"This is altogether one of the most likely attempts we have ever seen to bring astronomy down to the capacity of the young child."—*SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE*.

BOTANY—By Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., C.B., President of the Royal Society. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"To teachers the Primer will be of inestimable value, and not only because of the simplicity of the language and the clearness with which the subject matter is treated, but also on account of its coming from the highest authority, and so furnishing positive information as to the most suitable methods of teaching the science of botany."—*NATURE*.

LOGIC—By Professor STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"It appears to us admirably adapted to serve both as an introduction to scientific reasoning, and as a guide to sound judgment and reasoning in the ordinary affairs of life."—*ACADEMY*.

POLITICAL ECONOMY—By Professor STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. 18mo. 1s.

"Unquestionably in every respect an admirable primer."—*SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE*.

In preparation :—

INTRODUCTORY. By Professor HUXLEY. &c. &c.

SCIENCE LECTURES AT SOUTH
KENSINGTON.

VOL. I. Containing Lectures by Capt. ABNEY, Prof. STOKES, Prof. KENNEDY, F. G. BRAMWELL, Prof. G. FORBES, H. C. SORBY, J. T. BOTTOMLEY, S. H. VINES, and Prof. CAREY FOSTER. Crown 8vo. 6s.

VOL. II. In the Press.

Also, separately. 6d. each.

SOUND AND MUSIC. By Dr. W. H. STONE.

PHOTOGRAPHY. By Captain ABNEY, R.E.

KINEMATIC MODELS. By Professor KENNEDY, C.E.

OUTLINES OF FIELD GEOLOGY. By Professor GEIKIE, F.R.S.

ABSORPTION OF LIGHT, AND FLUORESCENCE.
By Professor STOKES, F.R.S.

TECHNICAL CHEMISTRY. By Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S.

THE STEAM ENGINE. By F. J. BRAMWELL, C.E., F.R.S.

ELECTROMETERS. By J. BOTTOMLEY, F.R.S.E.

MANCHESTER SCIENCE LECTURES
FOR THE PEOPLE.

Eighth Series, 1876-7. Crown 8vo. Illustrated. 6d. each.

WHAT THE EARTH IS COMPOSED OF. By Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S.

THE SUCCESSION OF LIFE ON THE EARTH. By Professor WILLIAMSON, F.R.S.

WHY THE EARTH'S CHEMISTRY IS AS IT IS. By J. N. LOCKYER, F.R.S.

Also complete in One Volume. Crown 8vo. cloth. 2s.

MISCELLANEOUS.

ABBOTT—*A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR*. An Attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

"Valuable not only as an aid to the critical study of Shakespeare, but as tending to familiarise the reader with Elizabethan English in general."
—*ATHENÆUM*.

ANDERSON—*LINEAR PERSPECTIVE, AND MODEL DRAWING*. A School and Art Class Manual, with Questions and Exercises for Examination, and Examples of Examination Papers. By LAURENCE ANDERSON. With Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 2s.

BARKER—*FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF COOKING*. By LADY BARKER. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"An unpretending but invaluable little work . . . The plan is admirable in its completeness and simplicity; it is hardly possible that anyone who can read at all can fail to understand the practical lessons on bread and beef, fish and vegetables."—*SPECTATOR*.

BERNERS—*FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH*. By J. BERNERS. Seventh Edition. 18mo. 1s.

BREYMANN—Works by HERMANN BREYMANN, Ph.D., Professor of Philology in the University of Munich.

A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"A good, sound, valuable philological grammar."—*SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE*.

FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

CALDERWOOD—*HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY*. By the Rev. HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., Professor of Moral Philosophy, University of Edinburgh. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"A compact and useful work . . . will be an assistance to many students outside the author's own University."—*GUARDIAN*.

DELAMOTTE—*A BEGINNER'S DRAWING BOOK*. By P. H. DELAMOTTE, F.S.A. Progressively arranged. New Edition improved. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"A concise, simple, and thoroughly practical work."—*GUARDIAN*.

Now publishing, crown 8vo., 2s. 6d. each.

ENGLISH MEN OF LETTERS. Edited by JOHN MORLEY.

These short books are addressed to the general public, with a view both to stirring and satisfying an interest in literature and its great topics in the minds of those who have to run as they read. An immense class is growing up, and must every year increase, whose education will have made them alive to the importance of the masters of our literature, and capable of intelligent curiosity as to their performances. The series is intended to give the means of nourishing this curiosity to an extent that shall be copious enough to be profitable for knowledge and life, and yet be brief enough to serve those whose leisure is scanty.

The following are arranged for:—

<i>SPENSER</i>	.	.	.	THE DEAN OF ST. PAUL'S.	
<i>HUME</i>	.	.	.	PROFESSOR HUXLEY.	
<i>BUNYAN</i>	.	.	.	J. A. FROUDE	
<i>JOHNSON</i>	.	.	.	LESLIE STEPHEN.	[Ready.
<i>GOLDSMITH</i>	.	.	.	WILLIAM BLACK.	[In the Press.
<i>DICKENS</i>	.	.	.	T. HUGHES, Q.C.	
<i>MILTON</i>	.	.	.	MARK PATTISON.	
<i>WORDSWORTH</i>	.	.	.	GOLDWIN SMITH.	
<i>SWIFT</i>	.	.	.	JOHN MORLEY.	
<i>BURNS</i>	.	.	.	PRINCIPAL SHAIRP.	
<i>SCOTT</i>	.	.	.	R. H. HUTTON.	[Ready.
<i>SHELLEY</i>	.	.	.	J. A. SYMONDS.	
<i>GIBBON</i>	.	.	.	J. C. MORISON.	[Ready.
<i>BYRON</i>	.	.	.	PROFESSOR NICHOL.	
<i>DEFOE</i>	.	.	.	W. MINTO.	

Others will follow.

FAWCETT—*TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY.* By MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT. Globe 8vo. 3s.

"The idea is a good one, and it is quite wonderful what a mass of economic teaching the author manages to compress into a small space."—*ATHENÆUM*.

FEARON—*SCHOOL INSPECTION.* By D. R. FEARON, M.A., Assistant Commissioner of Endowed Schools. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"The work is admirably adapted to serve the purpose for which it has been written. It is calculated to be eminently useful, and to have a powerful influence for good on our elementary education."—*ATHENÆUM*.

GLADSTONE—*SPELLING REFORM FROM AN EDUCATIONAL POINT OF VIEW.* By J. H. GLADSTONE, F.R.S., Member for the School Board for London. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

GOLDSMITH—*THE TRAVELLER*, or a Prospect of Society ; and *THE DESERTED VILLAGE.* By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. With Notes Philological and Explanatory, by J. W. HALES, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6d.

HALES—*LONGER ENGLISH POEMS*, with Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English. Chiefly for Use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature at King's College, London, &c. &c. Fifth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"The notes are very full and good, and the book, edited by one of our most cultivated English scholars, is probably the best volume of selections ever made for the use of English schools."—*PROFESSOR MORLEY'S First Sketch of English Literature.*

HOLE—*A GENEALOGICAL STEMMA OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND AND FRANCE.* By the Rev. C. HOLE. On Sheet. 1s.

JEPHSON—*SHAKESPEARE'S "TEMPEST."* With Glossarial and Explanatory Notes. By the Rev. J. M. JEPHSON. Second Edition. 18mo. 1s.

LITERATURE PRIMERS—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN,
Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D.,
President of the Philological Society. New Edition. 18mo.
cloth. 1s.

"A work quite precious in its way An excellent English Grammar for the lowest form."—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. In Two Parts. 18mo. 1s. each.

ENGLISH LITERATURE. By the Rev. STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"Unquestionably the best short sketch of English literature that has appeared."—*ATHENÆUM*.

PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

"Surely so much matter thoroughly good and clear was never before brought close together in the same compass."—*SATURDAY REVIEW*.

GREEK LITERATURE. By Professor JEBB, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

SHAKSPERE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. 1s.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

HOMER. By the Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P. 18mo. 1s.

In preparation :—

LATIN LITERATURE.

BIBLE PRIMER. By the Rev. STOPFORD BROOKE.

CHAUCEER. By F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE—By
G. EUGENE-FASNACHT, Senior Master of Modern Languages
Harpur Foundation Modern School, Bedford.

I.—First year, containing Easy Lessons on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s.

II.—Second Year, containing Conversational Lessons on Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE—By G. EUGENE FASNACHT.

Part I.—First Year. Easy Lessons and Rules on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Part II.—Second Year. Conversational Lessons in Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s.

MARTIN — *THE POET'S HOUR*: Poetry selected and arranged for Children. By FRANCES MARTIN. Third Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

SPRING-TIME WITH THE POETS: Poetry selected by FRANCES MARTIN. Second Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

MASSON (GUSTAVE)—*A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE* (French-English and English-French). Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Derivations, and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables. By GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant-Master and Librarian, Harrow School. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. half-bound. 6s.

"A book which any student, whatever may be the degree of his advancement in the language, would do well to have on the table close at hand while he is reading."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

MORRIS—Works by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., Lecturer on English Language and Literature in King's College School.

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-formation. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

"It marks an era in the study of the English tongue."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

"A genuine and sound book."—ATHENÆUM.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, containing Accidence and Word-formation. Third Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 18mo. 1s.

OLIPHANT—THE OLD AND MIDDLE ENGLISH. A New Edition of *THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH*. By J. KINGTON OLIPHANT. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

PALGRAVE—THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and Arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. 18mo. 2s. 6d. Also in Two parts. 18mo. 1s. each.

"While indeed a treasure for intelligent children, it is also a work which many older folk will be glad to have."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

PYLODET—NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION: containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words followed by Exercises, Vocabulary of Words in frequent use; Familiar Phrases and Dialogues; a Sketch of German Literature, Idiomatic Expressions, &c. By L. PYLODET. 18mo. cloth limp. 2s. 6d.

A SYNOPSIS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR. From the above. 18mo. 6d.

READING BOOKS—Adapted to the English and Scotch Codes. Bound in Cloth.

PRIMER. 18mo. (48 pp.) 2d.

BOOK I. for Standard I. 18mo. (96 pp.) 4d.

" II. " II. 18mo. (144 pp.) 5d.

" III. " III. 18mo. (160 pp.) 6d.

" IV. " IV. 18mo. (176 pp.) 8d.

" V. " V. 18mo. (380 pp.) 1s.

" VI. " VI. Crown 8vo. (430 pp.) 2s.

Book VI. is fitted for higher Classes, and as an Introduction to English Literature.

"They are far above any others that have appeared both in form and substance. . . . The editor of the present series has rightly seen that reading books must 'aim chiefly at giving to the pupils the power of accurate, and, if possible, apt and skilful expression; at cultivating in them a good literary taste, and at arousing a desire of further reading.' This is done by taking care to select the extracts from true English classics, going up in Standard VI. course to Chaucer, Hooker, and Bacon, as well as Wordsworth, Macaulay, and Froude. . . . This is quite on the right track, and indicates justly the ideal which we ought to set before us."—GUARDIAN.

SHAKESPEARE—A SHAKESPEARE MANUAL. By F. G. FLEAY, M.A., Head Master of Skipton Grammar School. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"A valuable contribution to the study of Shakespeare."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

SHAKESPEARE *continued*—

AN ATTEMPT TO DETERMINE THE CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER OF SHAKESPEARE'S PLAYS.
By the Rev. H. PAINE STOKES, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo.
4s. 6d.

SKEAT—*SHAKESPEARE'S PLUTARCH.* Being a Selection from the Lives in North's Plutarch which illustrate Shakespeare's Plays. Edited, with Introductions, Notes, Index of Names, and Glossarial Index, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

SONNENSCHN and **MEIKLEJOHN**—*THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ.* By A. SONNENSCHN and J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo.

COMPRISING :

THE NURSERY BOOK, containing all the Two-Letter Words in the Language. 1d. (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls. 5s.)

THE FIRST COURSE, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants. 6d.

THE SECOND COURSE, with Combinations and Bridges, consisting of Short Vowels with Double Consonants. 6d.

THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language. 6d.

"These are admirable books, because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read English."—SPECTATOR.

TANNER—*FIRST PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE.* By H. TANNER, F.C.S., Professor of Agricultural Science, University College, Aberystwith, &c. 18mo. 1s.

"We cordially recommend it to all students and teachers of this most important science."—SCHOOLMASTER.

TAYLOR—*WORDS AND PLACES*; or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev ISAAC TAYLOR, M.A. Third and cheaper Edition, revised and compressed. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6s.

TAYLOR—*A PRIMER OF PIANOFORTE PLAYING.* By FRANKLIN TAYLOR. Edited by GEORGE GROVE. 18mo. 1s.

"There are many hints of almost priceless worth not only to pupils but to teachers."—MORNING POST.

TEGETMEIER—*HOUSEHOLD MANAGEMENT AND COOKERY*. With an Appendix of Recipes used by the Teachers of the National School of Cookery. By W. B. TEGETMEIER. Compiled at the request of the School Board for London. 18mo. 1s.

"Admirably adapted to the use for which it was designed."—

ATHENÆUM

"A seasonable and thoroughly practical manual."—PALL MALL GAZETTE.

THRING—Works by EDWARD THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham.

THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH. With Questions. Fourth Edition. 18mo. 2s.

THE CHILD'S GRAMMAR. Being the Substance of "The Elements of Grammar taught in English," adapted for the Use of Junior Classes. A New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

SCHOOL SONGS. A Collection of Songs for Schools. With the Music arranged for four Voices. Edited by the Rev. E. THRING and H. RICCIUS. Folio. 7s. 6d.

TRENCH (ARCHBISHOP)—Works by R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

HOUSEHOLD BOOK OF ENGLISH POETRY. Selected and Arranged, with Notes. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

ON THE STUDY OF WORDS. Lectures addressed (originally) to the Pupils at the Diocesan Training School, Winchester. Seventeenth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT. Tenth Edition, revised and improved. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS, used formerly in Senses Different from their Present. Fourth Edition, enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

VAUGHAN (C. M.)—*WORDS FROM THE POETS*. By C. M. VAUGHAN. Eighth Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

WHITNEY—Works by WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College; first President of the American Philological Association, and hon. member of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland; and Correspondent of the Berlin Academy of Sciences.

WHITNEY *Continued*—

A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE, with Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 5s.

WHITNEY AND EDGREN—*A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY*, with Notation of Correspondences and Brief Etymologies. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY, assisted by A. H. EDGREN. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE GERMAN-ENGLISH, separately, 5s.

YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)—*THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS.* A Reading Book for Schools and general readers. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo. cloth. 1s.

HISTORY.

FREEMAN (EDWARD A.)—*OLD-ENGLISH HISTORY.*

By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. With Five Coloured Maps. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. half-bound. 6s.

"The book indeed is full of instruction and interest to students of all ages, and he must be a well-informed man indeed who will not rise from its perusal with clearer and more accurate ideas of a too much neglected portion of English History."—SPECTATOR.

GREEN.—*A SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.* By JOHN RICHARD GREEN. With Coloured Maps, Genealogical Tables, and Chronological Annals. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Fifty-fifth Thousand.

"Stands alone as the one general history of the country, for the sake of which all others, if young and old are wise, will be speedily and surely set aside."—ACADEMY.

HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS—Edited by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

I. GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY.

By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Chronological Table, Maps, and Index. 18mo. cloth. 3s. 6d.

HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS, *Continued*—

"It supplies the great want of a good foundation for historical teaching. The scheme is an excellent one, and this instalment has been executed in a way that promises much for the volumes that are yet to appear."—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

II. HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By EDITH THOMPSON.
New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Maps. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

"Freedom from prejudice, simplicity of style, and accuracy of statement are the characteristics of this little volume. It is a trustworthy text-book and likely to be generally serviceable in schools."—*PALL MALL GAZETTE*.

"Upon the whole, this manual is the best sketch of English history for the use of young people we have yet met with."—*ATHENÆUM*.

III. HISTORY OF SCOTLAND. By MARGARET MACARTHUR. New Edition. 18mo. 2s.

"An excellent summary, unimpeachable as to facts, and putting them in the clearest and most impartial light attainable."—*GUARDIAN*.

"Miss Macarthur has performed her task with admirable care, clearness, and fulness, and we have now for the first time a really good School History of Scotland."—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

IV. HISTORY OF ITALY. By the Rev. W. HUNT, M.A.
18mo. 3s.

"It possesses the same solid merit as its predecessors . . . the same scrupulous care about fidelity in details. . . . It is distinguished, too, by information on art, architecture, and social politics, in which the writer's grasp is seen by the firmness and clearness of his touch."—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

V. HISTORY OF GERMANY. By J. SIME, M.A.
18mo. 3s.

"A remarkably clear and impressive history of Germany. Its great events are wisely kept as central figures, and the smaller events are carefully kept, not only subordinate and subservient, but most skilfully woven into the texture of the historical tapestry presented to the eye."—*STANDARD*.

VI. HISTORY OF AMERICA. By JOHN A. DOYLE.
With Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"Mr. Doyle has performed his task with admirable care, fulness, and clearness, and for the first time we have for schools an accurate and interesting history of America, from the earliest to the present time."—*STANDARD*.

EUROPEAN COLONIES. By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. With Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"We have seldom met with an historian capable of forming a more comprehensive, far-seeing, and unprejudiced estimate of events and peoples, and we can commend this little work as one certain to prove of the highest interest to all thoughtful readers."—*TIMES*.

The following is in preparation :—

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE.

HISTORY PRIMERS—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN.
Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ROME. By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Merton College, Oxford. With Eleven Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"The author has been curiously successful in telling in an intelligent way the story of Rome from first to last."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., Fellow and late Tutor of University College, Oxford. With Five Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"We give our unqualified praise to this little manual."—SCHOOLMASTER.

EUROPEAN HISTORY. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D. With Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"A marvel of clearness."—ACADEMY.

"The work is always clear, and forms a luminous key to European history."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

"There are few writers but himself who could have compressed so much information in so little space."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By the Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Illustrated. 18mo. 1s.

"All that is necessary for the scholar to know is told so compactly yet so fully, and in a style so interesting, that it is impossible for even the duller boy to look on this little work in the same light as he regards his other school books."—SCHOOLMASTER.

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By H. F. TOZER, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

"Another valuable aid to the study of the ancient world. . . . It contains an enormous quantity of information packed into a small space, and at the same time communicated in a very readable shape."—JOHN BULL.

GEOGRAPHY. By GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L. With Maps. 18mo. 1s.

"A model of what such a work should be. . . . we know of no short treatise better suited to infuse life and spirit into the dull lists of proper names of which our ordinary class-books so often almost exclusively consist."—TIMES.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS. Illustrated. 18mo. 1s.

"A little book that throws a blaze of light on Roman History, and is, moreover, intensely interesting."—School Board Chronicle.

HISTORY PRIMERS *Continued*—

In preparation :—

ENGLAND. By J. R. GREEN, M.A.

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE.

MICHELET—*A SUMMARY OF MODERN HISTORY.*

Translated from the French of M. MICHELET, and continued to the Present Time, by M. C. M. SIMPSON. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"We are glad to see one of the ablest and most useful summaries of European history put into the hands of English readers. The translation is excellent."—STANDARD.

OTTÉ—*SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY.* By E. C. OTTÉ.

With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6s.

"A readable, well-arranged, complete, and accurate volume."—LITERARY REVIEW.

PAULI—*PICTURES OF OLD ENGLAND.* By Dr. R.

PAULI. Translated with the sanction of the Author by E. C. OTTÉ. Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)—*A PARALLEL HISTORY OF*

FRANCE AND ENGLAND: consisting of Outlines and Dates. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe," "Cameos of English History," &c., &c. Oblong 4to. 3s. 6d.

"We can imagine few more really advantageous courses of historical study for a young mind than going carefully and steadily through Miss Yonge's excellent little book."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY.—FROM ROLLO TO EDWARD II. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." Extra fcap. 8vo. Third Edition, enlarged. 5s.

"Instead of dry details, we have living pictures, faithful, vivid, and striking."—NONCONFORMIST.

A SECOND SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH

HISTORY—THE WARS IN FRANCE. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

"Though mainly intended for young readers, they will, if we mistake not, be found very acceptable to those of more mature years, and the life and reality imparted to the dry bones of history cannot fail to be attractive to readers of every age."—JOHN BULL.

YONGE, CHARLOTTE M., *Continued—*

A THIRD SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY—THE WARS OF THE ROSES. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

A FOURTH SERIES.

[*In the press.*]

EUROPEAN HISTORY. Narrated in a Series of Historical Selections from the Best Authorities. Edited and arranged by E. M. SEWELL and C. M. YONGE. First Series, 1003—1154. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. Second Series, 1088—1228. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"We know of scarcely anything which is so likely to raise to a higher level the average standard of English education."—*GUARDIAN*.

DIVINITY.

* * For other Works by these Authors, see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE.

ABBOTT (REV. E. A.)—BIBLE LESSONS. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"Wise, suggestive, and really profound initiation into religious thought."

—*GUARDIAN*.

"I think nobody could read them without being both the better for them himself, and being also able to see how this difficult duty of imparting a sound religious education may be effected."—*BISHOP OF ST. DAVID'S AT ABERGWILLY*.

ARNOLD—A BIBLE-READING FOR SCHOOLS—THE GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION* (Isaiah, Chapters xl.—lxvi.). Arranged and Edited for Young Learners. By MATTHEW ARNOLD, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel. Fourth Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

"There can be no doubt that it will be found excellently calculated to further instruction in Biblical literature in any school into which it may be introduced; and we can safely say that whatever school uses the book, it will enable its pupils to understand Isaiah, a great advantage compared with other establishments which do not avail themselves of it."—*TIMES*.

ISAIAH XL.—LXVI. With the Shorter Prophecies allied to it. Arranged and Edited, with Notes, by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 5s.

42 MACMILLAN'S EDUCATIONAL CATALOGUE.

GOLDEN TREASURY PSALTER—Students' Edition. Being an Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically Arranged, by Four Friends," with briefer Notes. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

HARDWICK—Works by Archdeacon HARDWICK.

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH. Middle Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps constructed for this work by A. KEITH JOHNSTON. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"As a manual for the student of ecclesiastical history in the Middle Ages, we know no English work which can be compared to Mr. Hardwick's book."—GUARDIAN.

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE REFORMATION. Fourth Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

MACLEAR—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Head Master of King's College School.

A CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. New Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"A careful and elaborate though brief compendium of all that modern research has done for the illustration of the Old Testament. We know of no work which contains so much important information in so small a compass."—BRITISH QUARTERLY REVIEW.

A CLASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, including the Connection of the Old and New Testament. With Four Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 5s. 6d.

"A singularly clear and orderly arrangement of the Sacred Story. His work is solidly and completely done."—ATHENÆUM.

A SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

A SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

These works have been carefully abridged from the author's larger manuals.

MACLEAR *Continued*—

CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

"It is indeed the work of a scholar and divine, and as such, though extremely simple, it is also extremely instructive. There are few clergymen who would not find it useful in preparing candidates for Confirmation; and there are not a few who would find it useful to themselves as well."—*LITERARY CHURCHMAN.*

A FIRST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND, with Scripture Proofs, for Junior Classes and Schools. 18mo. 6d. New Edition.

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATION AND FIRST COMMUNION. WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS. 32mo. cloth extra, red edges. 2s.

"It is earnest, orthodox, and affectionate in tone. The form of self-examination is particularly good."—*JOHN BULL.*

THE ORDER OF CONFIRMATION, WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS. 32mo. 6d.

FIRST COMMUNION, WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS FOR THE NEWLY CONFIRMED. 32mo. 6d.

M'CLELLAN—*THE NEW TESTAMENT.* A New Translation on the Basis of the Authorised Version, from a Critically revised Greek Text, with Analyses, copious References and Illustrations from original authorities, New Chronological and Analytical Harmony of the Four Gospels, Notes and Dissertations. A contribution to Christian Evidence. By JOHN BROWN M'CLELLAN, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. In Two Vols. Vol. I.—The Four Gospels with the Chronological and Analytical Harmony. 8vo. 30s.

"One of the most remarkable productions of recent times," says the *Theological Review*, "in this department of sacred literature;" and the *British Quarterly Review* terms it "a thesaurus of first-hand investigations."

MAURICE—*THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED, AND THE COMMANDMENTS.* A Manual for Parents and Schoolmasters. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures. By the Rev. F. DENISON MAURICE, M.A. 18mo. cloth, limp. 1s.

PROCTER—*A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER*, with a Rationale of its Offices. By FRANCIS PROCTER, M.A. Thirteenth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

PROCTER AND MACLEAR—*AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER*. Re-arranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the Morning and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. PROCTER and the Rev. Dr. MACLEAR. New and Enlarged Edition, containing the Communion Service and the Confirmation and Baptismal Offices. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

PSALMS OF DAVID CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED. By Four Friends. An Amended Version, with Historical Introduction and Explanatory Notes. Second and Cheaper Edition, with Additions and Corrections. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

"One of the most instructive and valuable books that has been published for many years."—SPECTATOR.

RAMSAY—*THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL*; or, the Church Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the Use of Clergymen, Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. Second Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

SIMPSON—*AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH*. By WILLIAM SIMPSON, M.A. Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

TRENCH—By R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin. *LECTURES ON MEDIEVAL CHURCH HISTORY*. Being the substance of Lectures delivered at Queen's College, London. 8vo. 12s.

SYNONYMS OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. Eighth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12s.

WESTCOTT—Works by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Canon of Peterborough.

A GENERAL SURVEY OF THE HISTORY OF THE CANON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT DURING THE FIRST FOUR CENTURIES. Fourth Edition. With Preface on "Supernatural Religion." Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"As a theological work it is at once perfectly fair and impartial, and imbued with a thoroughly religious spirit; and as a manual it exhibits, in a lucid form and in a narrow compass, the results of extensive research and accurate thought. We cordially recommend it."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE FOUR GOSPELS. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"To learning and accuracy which commands respect and confidence, he unites what are not always to be found in union with these qualities, the no less valuable faculties of lucid arrangement and graceful and facile expression."—LONDON QUARTERLY REVIEW.

THE BIBLE IN THE CHURCH. A Popular Account of the Collection and Reception of the Holy Scriptures in the Christian Churches. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

"We would recommend every one who loves and studies the Bible to read and ponder this exquisite little book. Mr. Westcott's account of the 'Canon' is *true history* in its highest sense."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

THE GOSPEL OF THE RESURRECTION. Thoughts on its Relation to Reason and History. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

WILSON—*THE BIBLE STUDENT'S GUIDE* to the more Correct Understanding of the English Translation of the Old Testament, by reference to the original Hebrew. By WILLIAM WILSON, D.D., Canon of Winchester, late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. Second Edition, carefully revised. 4to. cloth. 25s.

"For all earnest students of the Old Testament Scriptures it is a most valuable manual. Its arrangement is so simple that those who possess only their mother-tongue, if they will take a little pains, may employ it with great profit."—NONCONFORMIST.

YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)—SCRIPTURE READINGS FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe."

FIRST SERIES. GENESIS TO DEUTERONOMY. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, Second Edition, 3s. 6d.

SECOND SERIES. From JOSHUA to SOLOMON. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

THIRD SERIES. The KINGS and the PROPHETS. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

FOURTH SERIES. The GOSPEL TIMES. 1s. 6d. With Comments, extra fcap. 8vo., 3s. 6d. }

FIFTH SERIES. *[In the press.]*

Actual need has led the author to endeavour to prepare a reading book convenient for study with children, containing the very words of the Bible, with only a few expedient omissions, and arranged in Lessons of such length as by experience she has found to suit with children's ordinary power of accurate attentive interest. The verse form has been retained, because of its convenience for children reading in class, and as more resembling their Bibles; but the poetical portions have been given in their lines. When Psalms or portions from the Prophets illustrate or fall in with the narrative they are given in their chronological sequence. The Scripture portion, with a very few notes explanatory of mere words, is bound up apart, to be used by children, while the same is also supplied with a brief comment, the purpose of which is either to assist the teacher in explaining the lesson, or to be used by more advanced young people to whom it may not be possible to give access to the authorities whence it has been taken. Professor Huxley, at a meeting of the London School Board, particularly mentioned the selection made by Miss Yonge as an example of how selections might be made from the Bible for School Reading. See *TIMES*, March 30, 1871.

MACMILLAN'S GLOBE LIBRARY.

Beautifully printed on toned paper, price 3s. 6d. each. Also kept in various morocco and calf bindings, at moderate prices.

The *Saturday Review* says :—"The Globe Editions are admirable for their scholarly editing, their typographical excellence, their compendious form, and their cheapness."

The *Daily Telegraph* calls it "a series yet unrivalled for its combination of excellence and cheapness."

SHAKESPEARE'S COMPLETE WORKS. Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A. With Glossary.

MORTE D'ARTHUR. Sir Thomas Malory's Book of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights of the Round Table. The Edition of Caxton, revised for Modern Use. With an Introduction, Notes, and Glossary, by Sir EDWARD STRACHEY.

BURNS'S COMPLETE WORKS: the Poems, Songs, and Letters. Edited, with Glossarial Index and Biographical Memoir, by ALEXANDER SMITH.

ROBINSON CRUSOE. Edited, after the Original Editions, with Biographical Introduction, by HENRY KINGSLEY.

SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS. With Biographical and Critical Essay, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE.

GOLDSMITH'S MISCELLANEOUS WORKS. With Biographical Introduction by Professor MASSON.

SPENSER'S COMPLETE WORKS. Edited, with Glossary, by R. MORRIS, and Memoir by J. W. HALES.

POPE'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Notes and Introductory Memoir, by Professor WARD.

DRYDEN'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with a Revised Text and Notes, by W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge.

COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Notes and Biographical Introduction, by W. BENHAM.

VIRGIL'S WORKS. Rendered into English Prose. With Introductions, Notes, Analysis, and Index, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A.

HORACE. Rendered into English Prose. With running Analysis, Introduction, and Notes, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A.

MILTON'S POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Introductions, &c., by Professor MASSON.

*Published every Thursday, price 6d.; Monthly Parts, 2s.
and 2s. 6d., Half-Yearly Volumes, 15s.*

NATURE:

AN ILLUSTRATED JOURNAL OF SCIENCE.

NATURE expounds in a popular and yet authentic manner, the GRAND RESULTS OF SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH, discussing the most recent scientific discoveries, and pointing out the bearing of Science upon civilisation and progress, and its claims to a more general recognition, as well to a higher place in the educational system of the country.

It contains original articles on all subjects within the domain of Science; Reviews setting forth the nature and value of recent Scientific Works; Correspondence Columns, forming a medium of Scientific discussion and of intercommunication among the most distinguished men of Science; Serial Columns, giving the gist of the most important papers appearing in Scientific Journals, both Home and Foreign; Transactions of the principal Scientific Societies and Academies of the World; Notes, &c.

In schools where Science is included in the regular course of studies, this paper will be most acceptable, as it tells what is doing in Science all over the world, is popular without lowering the standard of Science, and by it a vast amount of information is brought within a small compass, and students are directed to the best sources for what they need. The various questions connected with Science teaching in schools are also fully discussed, and the best methods of teaching are indicated.

97





